



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

①

Government
Publications

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE.

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

March 14, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XVIII

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 11 1975

LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.	
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,	
Mr. Alick Ryder and	
Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Enquiry;
Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.	
Mr. Jack Marshall,	
Mr. Darryl Carter, and	
Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited;
Mr. Reginald Gibbs Q.C.	
Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines Ltd.;
Mr. Russell Anthony,	
Prof. Alastair Lucas &	
Dr. Andrew Thompson	for Canadian Arctic Resources Committee;
Mr. Glen W. Bell and	
Mr. Gerry Sutton	for Northwest Territories Indian Brotherhood and Metis Association of the Northwest Territories;
Mr. John U. Bayly	for Inuit Tapirisat of Canada and the Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement;
Mr. Ron Veale and	
Mr. Allan Luke	for Yukon Native Brother- hood;
Mr. Carson H. Templeton	for Environment Protection Board;
Mr. David Reesor	for Northwest Territories Association of Municipali- ties
Mr. Murray Sigler	Northwest Territories Chamber of Commerce

347
M835
Vol. XVIII

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 11 1975

LIBRARY

I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

Guy Leslie WILLIAMS

Philip Harvey DAU

John Douglas MOLLARD

David William WATSON

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Bayly(Cont)

2011

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott

2046

EXHIBITS:

75 Status of Lands required for pipeline
right-of-way & ancillary facilities,
Yukon & N.W.T.

1934

E R R A T U M

For "CAGL" it should read "CAGSL"

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

March 14, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,

I thought I should report to you that I've received another letter from the Minister of the Environment. It's a letter that foretells the events of last weekend but indicates in a general way the posture of the Department for the future, and I just thought as the other correspondence from her had been read and made part of the record, I should read this as well.

It's undated:

"Dear Mr. Scott:

I acknowledge receipt of your letter of March 5, which was dictated by telephone. My officials have communicated with you and you have now received the letter I had addressed to Commissioner Berger assuring him of my fullest co-operation. In summary, all information available to the Department of the Environment, as well as the expertise that we possess, can be used as testimony. In order to make the arrangement to utilize all information and expert knowledge we have readily agreed with your suggestion to meet with you at the earliest possible time and have delegated Dr. J.S. Tener to meet with you in Edmonton on Sunday, March 9th. In conclusion, I am pleased to note that the Commissioner at no time doubted about

1 our fullest co-operation and I wish through
2 you to thank him for his confidence. I would
3 encourage you in closing to maintain close
4 liaison with our Departmental officials so
5 that our resources will always be utilized
6 effectively."

7 And it's signed by Madame Sauve, and I simply repeat
8 what I said the other day, that if any of the parti-
9 cipants have any difficulty in applying the arrange-
10 ments that we then outlined, I would be grateful if
11 they spoke to me at the first opportunity so that
12 we can take a hand and see to it that Madame Sauve's
13 wishes are fully respected.

14 The second matter, Mr. Commis-
15 sioner, is -- relates to the request that Mr. Anthony
16 made yesterday. It's a matter of some significance,
17 and I would request that your ruling on this matter
18 should be deferred for an unstated or unspecified
19 period of time. I have communicated to Mr. Genest
20 and to Mr. Anthony my views that this deferment should
21 occur, and they have agreed to submit to my suggestion
22 -- if I can put it that way -- on the understanding
23 that the matter can be raised by either of them at any
24 time and more particularly, if not raised before, when
25 Messrs. Dau and Williams return on the construction
26 panel or when Mr. Horte gives evidence, as Mr. Genest
27 said he would.

28 In Mr. Genest's absence, I
29 have communicated this to Mr. Marshall and I understand
30 that he concurs.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
2 Mr. Marshall, is it intended to call Mr Horte as
3 as a witness or as a member of any panel in Phase 1?

4 MR. MARSHALL: Yes sir, I
5 propose to call him at the end of Phase 1. He will
6 likely have supporting him a panel.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Bayly?

8 MR. BAYLY: I believe we
9 left off yesterday, Mr. Commissioner, with considera-
10 tions regarding repairs to pipeline facilities should
11 they break, and how they would be carried out, and
12 whether these were one of the things that were con-
13 sidered in route selection.

14
15 GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS,
16 PHILIP HARVEY DAU,
17 JOHN DOUGLAS MOLLARD,
DAVID WILLIAM WATSON, resumed:

18 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BAYLY (CONTINUED):

19 Q If I might ask the panel
20 then following that up, regarding the selection of the
21 prime route and in particular that portion of the prime
22 route which goes across the north slope of the Yukon,
23 was a study done of the weather conditions during the
24 proposed construction months, prior to choosing the
25 prime route?

26 A Yes.

27 Q And could you give us
28 the name of that study and give us a synopsis of its
29 findings and how it related to your choice of this as
30 the prime route?

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A It's not a formal report
2 in that sense. It was in our work papers. I'm sure
3 a summary could be made available, I do not have it
4 here.

5 Q All right, do you know
6 of your own knowledge the contents of that report, and
7 could you give us some idea of what the findings were?

8 A It's a summary of all of
9 the weather information that we could find. It lists
10 extremes in temperatures, averages, I believe it has
11 some information with respect to snowfall, rainfall in
12 the summer, that type of information/^{that}is available in
13 published documents.

14 Q And when you say "publi-
15 shed documents", then this was information that you've
16 gathered rather than generated through Northern Engin-
17 eering Services?

18 A That's correct, yes.

19 Q And do you know over
20 what time span that weather information was gathered
21 prior to your choice of this as the prime route?

22 A It depends on the local
23 stations. I seem to recall that the weather information
24 from Aklavik, for instance, goes back many years.
25 Some of the weather information from the Dew Line
26 Stations obviously only go back to the point in time
27 that the Dew Line was built.

28 Q All right. If I were to
29 suggest to you, Mr. Dau, that during the construction
30 months, that north shore of the Yukon, the Beaufort

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 Sea side, is prone to some bad blizzards and white-out
2 conditions which last for long periods of time, in
3 some years. Would you be able to agree or disagree
4 with me?

5 A I would agree with you.

6 Q And would that effect
7 construction schedules?

8 A Yes, it does.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1
2 Q And has that been
3 taken into consideration in choosing this as the
4 prime route?

5 A Yes, it is part of the
6 consideration.

7 Q All right, and in spite
8 of that you felt that you could still recommend that
9 as the prime route, is that correct?

10 A That is correct.

11 Q Now, with regard to
12 snowfall, I understand for example, in order to do
13 your construction on snow and ice routes, roads,
14 you may require a large amount of snow, is that
15 correct?

16 A Yes.

17 Q Has the snow fall been
18 gauged in the north slope area?

19 A Yes, I had assumed
20 that this type of questioning would come during
21 the construction phase and I do not have that infor-
22 mation with me.

23 Q All right, I did not
24 want to go into the details, I just wanted to
25 know whether or not this was something that was
26 taken into consideration in the choice of this as
27 the prime route.

28 A It was.

29 Q And over what
30 period of time was it studied in your recollection?

A I am not sure who first

1 used the word "prime", it is -- my understanding
2 is that it is not just engineering and economic
3 consideration, it is the prime route considering
4 all considerations.

5 Q And do you mean as "prime"
6 best route or first choice, or the one --

7 A First choice I would --

8 Q All right, you have
9 stated earilier in cross-examination that other
10 routes would be possible if they were recommended
11 and given to you by Governments or whoever.

12 A Yes, that is correct.

13 Q Now, in route selection
14 I am wondering if the Native peoples were consulted
15 about the following, in the studies that you did and
16 I have a list of things here and I will read them
17 out ot you one at a time and perhaps you can comment
18 on them. The first place was with regard to weather
19 conditions.

20 A Not to my knowledge.

21 Q With regard to ice condi-
22 tions?

23 A Yes, I am sure that they
24 must have been, but I do not have an instance, I
25 could not give you --

26 Q All right, would Mr.
27 Williams know the answer to that question?

28 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

29 A I can think of one
30 instance. We had on our staff for a period

1 of several years Frank Hanson who was raised in
2 Akavik and I do recall discussing with him the ice
3 situation in the delta in particular.

4 Q All right, with regard
5 to precipitation -- snow fall and rainfall.

6 WITNESS DAU:

7 A I think the same would
8 apply as Mr. Williams has said, I am sure that that
9 has been discussed with Frank Hanson. I know of no
10 other specific information.

11 Q All right, is that true,
12 Mr. Williams that you spoke to Mr. Hanson about
13 rainfall and snowfall as well, or do you recall
14 that?

15 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

16 A I am sure I did and
17 also during the many months that I spent at the
18 Sans Sault Test Facility we had several native
19 employees working with us there and I do recall discus-
20 sing this with them on many occasions.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: You said
22 you had native employees at the Sans Sault Test site.
23 That is somewhere between Norman Wells and Fort
24 Good Hope, is it not?

25 A That is correct.

26 Q Were those employees
27 employed in a -- to advise Northern Engineering
28 or Arctic Gas about such matters as rainfall and
29 snowfall or were they doing -- were they employed
30 to do other tasks, sir.

1 A They were employed to
2 do other tasks, sir.

3 Q Such as what?
4 Working in the cafeteria, that sort of thing?

5 A No, sir, they were --
6 at one point during the construction of the
7 Sans Sault Test site we had as many as 13 northern
8 natives working at the site. They came from --
9 I am sorry, they were employees of Banister Construc-
10 tion who were the contractors to build the facilities,
11 they were doing work with respect to the construction
12 of the site itself. There were a few machine opera-
13 tors, mainly they were labourers. Later on in the
14 operation and maintenance of the site we had
15 another group of about five working at the site
16 for a period up to a year, a year and a half,
17 at least one of them, Mike Selemeo from Aklavik --

18 Q Mr. Williams, are you
19 telling me that Arctic Gas and Northern Engineering
20 consulted these native people employed in these
21 tasks at Sans Sault in the establishment of a
22 site as advisors or consultants with regard to the
23 snowfall and rainfall likely to be encountered
24 along the route of the proposed pipeline?

25 A No, sir, I am not.

26 MR. BAYLY:

27 Q Thank you, and in
28 other words, this was conversation that you had
29 with them quite apart from their regular duties?

30 A Yes, and I am sorry,

1 I thought that was an answer to your question --
2 I may have misinterpreted it.

3 Q Yes, all right.

4 Did you document any of
5 their answers or were these just things you stored
6 up in your head?

7 A The latter, sir.

8 Q Can you tell us what
9 comment they had to make?

10 A Yes, I can comment
11 on a discussion with Frank Hanson in particular with
12 respect to the ice in the Delta during spring runoff.
13 When we were initially looking at the cross-delta route
14 we had a concern that perhaps the ice moved out of the
15 delta similarly to what we had seen in the main
16 body of the Mackenzie River and in a reconnaissance
17 trip it did not appear that this was the case and
18 this was confirmed by Frank Hanson, of his many years
19 in that area, that it does in fact go out very quietly
20 in the delta -- the ice, that is.

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 Q Now with regard to prefer-
2 red or prime route selection, did you consult with
3 native peoples with regard to their feelings on routes?

4 WITNESS DAU: A I don't recall such
5 instances.

6 Q Mr. Williams?

7 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Again it
8 would be in passing discussions rather than seeking
9 out this information on a mile to mile basis.

10 Q All right, was any con-
11 sulting done, to your knowledge, by anyone other than
12 Northern Engineering Services as an input into route
13 selection? In other words, were there people at your
14 April, 1973 seminar from the native groups there to
15 discuss the selection of routes?

16 A People were at that
17 meeting, that seminar, who had had meetings in various
18 communities along the route.

19 Q And were any of the
20 native organizations at that meeting represented?

21 A I don't think so. I'm
22 not certain but I don't think so.

23 Q All right. Now when you
24 were outlining hunting areas, which you have acknowl-
25 edged in various reports and in your application, the
26 fact that they exist, did you have consultations with
27 the native peoples about where these were and where
28 the best ones were and where the fragile areas were?

29 A I did not, sir, no.

30 Q Do you know of any reports

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 on that arising out of discussions or interviews with
2 native peoples?

3 A Yes, I'm sure that they
4 are included in the Gemini report.

5 Q It would be to the
6 Gemini report that we would have to look for those,
7 is that correct?

8 A And possibly others.
9 Those are the ones that come to mind readily.

10 Q O.K., and with regard
11 to traplines, would the same be true with the exception
12 of your mapping of those registered traplines that can
13 be found by searching?

14 A Yes sir.

15 MR. MARSHALL: Excuse me, Mr.
16 Commissioner, I think Mr. Genest read into the record
17 the statement contained in the responses that were
18 filed by Arctic Gas, and pertaining to this question
19 of the mapping of the traplines, and the answer there
20 indicates that that's the best information that could
21 be obtained, as of that time from various sources,
22 and it's not limited to the registered traplines
23 only.

24 MR. BAYLY: Mr. Commissioner,
25 I thank my learned friend for that response. It may
26 not be something which is within the knowledge of his
27 panel but it is within his own knowledge.

28 Q Now if I could go to this
29 status of lands document, Mr. Williams, document 3.11,
30 which I believe now has been tendered as an exhibit.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 It's No. 75. I'm not going to go through the whole
2 thing, Mr. Bell has gone through a large part of it,
3 but I'd like you to turn, if you would, to page 20 of
4 that report.

5 A Yes sir.

6 Q Now on page 20 at the
7 middle of the page, there is a paragraph referring to
8 some map references and if I could read that paragraph
9 to you, perhaps you could make a comment on it. This
10 is MP-194.8 - MP-260:

11 "No dispositions appear on this map sheet. It
12 Is important to note, however, that the entire
13 route in the Canadian portion of this sheet
14 lies within an area reserved for the hunting
15 and trapping activities of natives from Aklavik
16 and Tuktoyaktuk. During the last two years only
17 two serious trappers worked this area, plus one
18 family resident on Herschel Island."

19 Do you know, Mr. Williams, the source of this material
20 about the "two serious trappers?"

21 A No sir, I don't. I could
22 possibly speculate.

23 Q All right, would that come
24 from Mr. Fox, the land man?

25 A Yes, he wrote the report
26 and he would know where he got that information from.

27 Q I wonder if you could
28 find out for us and perhaps this information could be
29 conveyed? I make this request through you, Mr. Commis-
30 sioner, with regard to the sources of this information.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 I don't know if my learned friend has any objection to
2 that.

3 MR. MARSHALL: I think, Mr.
4 Commissioner, we could provide my learned friend with
5 a letter with that information, provide the Inquiry
6 with it. I'll check with Mr. Fox on my return to
7 Calgary.

8 MR. BAYLY: I'd be content
9 with that at this point, Mr. Commissioner.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Just off the
11 top of your head, Mr. Williams, that's this coastal
12 route, Alaska-Yukon border to Travaillant Lake, map
13 260, if that's what that does mean. The entire route
14 in the Canadian portion of this sheet, what portion
15 of the route from Alaska to Travaillant Lake is in
16 that sheet, can you say offhand?

17 A Yes sir, approximately
18 65 miles in Canada. I'm sorry, ~~from~~ the Alaska-Yukon
19 border east towards the delta, that map shows about
20 65 miles route in Canada.

21 MR. BAYLY: Q With regard to
22 this map then, Mr. Williams, I take it the other maps
23 take in the rest of the area that's discussed, or is
24 MP-194.8 - MP-260, only one map?

25 WITNESS DAU: A Those are pipeline
26 mileposts, "MP" stands for milepost and identifies
27 the location on the route.

28 Q So this is a distance of
29 65 miles, I see; and that is on the coast adjacent to
30 Herschel Island, is it?

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A Yes.

2 Q Now, then, if I were to
3 suggest to you that there are more than two serious
4 trappers in this area, would you be able to disagree
5 with me at this point, of your own knowledge?
6 Either Mr. Williams or Mr. Dau.

7 WITNESS WILLIAMS: No, sir.

8 Q I take it then in prime
9 route selection that because this report appears to have
10 been out about the time the prime route was selected,
11 that the hunting areas of the people of Aklavik were
12 not taken into consideration in this route selection,
13 would that be a fair statement? They were acknowledged
14 but the route appears to go through the hunting area
15 of these people, is that correct?

16 WITNESS DAU: A That is correct.

17 Q And were hunting and
18 trapping areas of people along the entire route taken
19 into consideration or was it assumed that you would
20 have to infringe on some of them, in any event?

21 A I think we said yesterday,
22 sir, we had to infringe on them. There are so many that
23 we can't miss them all.

24 Q And that is referring to
25 the Mackenzie Valley, I take it, as opposed to alternate
26 routes where hunting and trapping areas may not have
27 been examined by either Northern Engineering Services
28 or to your knowledge, Arctic Gas?

29 A Alternate routes, sir?

30 Q Yes.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A Such as the interior
2 route?

3 Q Such as the interior
4 route, or perhaps the Fairbanks route or --

5 A The reason I'm asking
6 the question, the Fairbanks and Fort Yukon is referred
7 to as corridors and there is a difference.

8 Q All right. Let's get
9 the terms straight then. Is this the only corridor in
10 which hunting and trapping was looked at, to your
11 knowledge?

12 A I believe that is
13 correct. We did not get into that amount of detail on
14 the alternative corridors such as Fairbanks and Fort
15 Yukon.

16 Q Could you tell us, please,
17 what technical advances, if any, have been made to
18 cause you to reconsider the cross-delta route as a
19 possibility?

20 A In the technical sense, we
21 have more detailed information with respect to channel
22 crossings, crossing Shallow Bay and some test hole
23 delta within the delta itself. We have much more
24 information now that we had say two or three years ago.

25 Q What about below ice
26 pipe-laying techniques, have they improved to enable
27 you to consider this more seriously?

28 A No, I don't think the
29 techniques have that great an improvement over that
30 period of time. They quite obviously have improved but

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
CrossExam by Bayly

1 that's not an important point.

2 Q So the important points
3 were with regard to the fact that you didn't have data
4 before that you now have, is that correct?

5 A Yes, both in the technical
6 sense and also from the environment_{al} viewpoint, we
7 have more environmental information now than we had
8 two or three years ago.

9 Q And you've stated before
10 that all you were able to say is that there was a belief
11 that at one time the delta was more fragile than you
12 now consider it to be. Is that correct?

13 A That's my understanding,
14 sir, yes.

15 Q Now, the cross-delta
16 proposal, I assume, has been the result of some studies
17 going back some period of time, and I wonder if you
18 could give me some idea of how long this has been under
19 consideration as an alternate route in the prime
20 corridor?

21 A I would say under serious
22 consideration in the fall of '73, September, October,
23 something like that.

24 Q And is that why the
25 water bottom survey was conducted by Kenting in
26 April of 1974, as one of the studies that you wanted
27 to do to collect more data -- and I'll refer to that
28 document by number, Mr. Commissioner, it's No. 218 and
29 it's referred to as a document upon which these -- this
30 panel might intend to refer or rely.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A That was certainly part
2 of the studies we performed, yes.

3 Q Have there been other
4 studies, Mr. Dau?

5 A Since then?

6 Q Yes.

7 A Yes.

8 Q Now, correct me if I'm
9 wrong, but I think one of the limitations of that
10 study is that Dr. Wyder who did it said that the data
11 were unreliable at depths of nine feet or less, is that
12 correct?

13 A I believe that's correct,
14 yes.

15 Q And is it not true that
16 where the testing was done in Shallow Bay was generally
17 speaking less than ten feet, and in most areas less
18 than nine feet in that survey?

19 A I'm not sure if it's
20 most areas, there are significant parts of the bay
21 that are less than nine feet, yes.

22 Q All right, if you could
23 just confirm what I have to say from that report, in
24 any event have a look at the profiles that are part
25 of that report, and I refer specifically to the follow-
26 ing four profiles: 6, 7, 7-A and 8. Can you tell
27 me from the profiles if my information or my interpre-
28 tation of them was correct, that the areas tested at
29 Shallow Bay were less than ten feet by and large, and
30 most of the crossing area appeared to be less than

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 nine feet?

2 A That's what the profile
3 shows, sir.

4 Q And can you give us an
5 idea of what has been done since in order to get more
6 reliable soundings at Shallow Bay?

7 A Yes, we considered this
8 report very preliminary. It was conducted in a rela-
9 tively short period of time. We believed that this
10 was the fastest way of getting this information. It
11 formed part of the preliminary investigation which
12 resulted in improving the location of some of the
13 originally selected crossings. In the past summer we
14 have conducted further programs from a boat, which is
15 much more accurate, with echo sounders, on the crossings
16 that had been selected and the -- I believe the next
17 panel is discussing some of this in detail with cross-
18 sections that are much more accurate than anything
19 that's shown here.

1 Q I wonder if you could
2 help us, in letting us know whether any of these
3 studies have been listed in the lists of documents
4 to your knowledge?

5 A I would suspect sir,
6 they are on the next panel, but I do not know for sure.

7 Q I wonder, perhaps, Mr.
8 Commissioner if Mr. Marshall could help us in that
9 area.

10 MR. MARSHALL: I think that
11 next panel will deal with geotechnical subjects and
12 in view of the decision to defer consideration --
13 detailed consideration of cross-delta to a later date,
14 the geotechnical panel, is not prepared at this time
15 to go into great detail on the cross-delta. We will
16 certainly be presenting that later. I think that
17 we have advised the counsel for the various partici-
18 pants, but we have not yet furnished them with lists
19 of various reports pertaining to specifically cross-
20 delta. These are being assembled and we hope to have
21 these out to you this coming week.

22 MR. BAYLY: I am assuming,
23 Mr. Commissioner, that they have been prepared, be-
24 cause Mr. Dau's answer suggests that there were other
25 studies and if they are coming next week I will be
26 satisfied with that.

27 Q Mr. Dau, to your
28 knowledge, were the traditional pursuits of the IN-
29 dians and the Eskimos considered in choosing the
30 cross-Delta as an alternate route?

1 A Yes, I believe --
2 I believe that in the environmental section there
3 was some consideration of fishing and hunting.
4 Now, the specific details I am not sure of.

5 Q All right, when you
6 say hunting, what hunting would you be referring to?

7 A Whales..

8 Q And I take it then that
9 that will be produced as part of the cross-delta
10 material?

11 MR. MARSHALL: Yes.

12 MR. BAYLY:

13 Q Can you give us an
14 idea, from an engineering point of view, what studies
15 have yet to be done before the cross-delta route could
16 be formally considered and proposed, Mr. Dau.

17 A We have concluded the
18 technical studies in my view. That is the studies that
19 are necessary to make that decision.

20 Q All right, and if I un-
21 derstand correctly the mechanics of the way that
22 these things work as between Northern Engineering
23 Services and Arctic Gas, you present Arctic Gas with
24 an opinion that it can be done and Arctic Gas then
25 decides whether it should be proposed, is that correct?

26 A Yes, the decision on
27 whether it is to be filed or not is not ours.

28 Q Yes.

29 But you concluded then from
30 your studies that it is a possible thing to do from

1 an engineering point of view?

2 A Yes.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: From your
4 point of view is the ~~cross~~-delta route, the preferred
5 route?

6 A From a technical
7 sense, yes, sir.

8 Q From an engineering
9 sense?

10 A Yes, sir.

11 MR. BAYLY:

12 Q And that would be
13 preferred over what has formally been proposed
14 as the "Prime Route" in your view?

15 A Yes, sir.

16 MR. MARSHALL: Just so that
17 the record is clear on that point, sir, Mr. Dau is
18 stating his engineering opinion.

19 MR. BAYLY: I quite under-
20 stand that, Mr. Commissioner.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, he
22 does not purport to speak for Arctic Gas.

23 MR. MARSHALL: Nor does he
24 purport to speak for the socio-economic consultants
25 or the environmentalists.

26 MR. BAYLY: I gather that
27 he speaks for Northern Engineering Services.

28 MR. SCOTT: I do not want
29 to intervene at this stage, but it might be
30 useful to -- maybe Mr. Bayly is going to pursue it --

1 to find out what the prime route is now. Has the
2 prime route changed or has it not changed.

3 MR. BAYLY: I would be
4 quite happy to have the witness answer Mr. Scott's
5 question if he would.

6 MR. MARSHALL: With your
7 leave, Mr. Commisioner, this is a matter that Mr.
8 Genest dealt with the other day in his remarks.
9 He said that the prime route has not changed from
10 what had originally been filed.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: But
12 it may --

13 MR. MARSHALL: But it
14 may-- the exception of course being in the Fort Simpson
15 revision which has been filed as an amendment to
16 the prime route.

17 MR. BAYLY:

18 Q Would it be fair to
19 say then, Mr. Dau, that the prime route is out
20 of your hands -- you may have a preferred route
21 but the prime route is the one that is proposed to
22 the Minister?

23 A The prime route that
24 you find in the application is the one that is
25 proposed to the Minister, yes.

26 Q Yes, so any of your
27 personal preferences may not necessarily reflect
28 prime route selection by Arctic Gas?

29 A I do not quite under
30 stand that.

1 Q You stated, Mr. Dau,
2 that you thought that the cross-delta route in your
3 own personal opinion was preferred over the route down
4 the east side of the Richardson Mountains, is that not
5 correct?

6 A From an engineering point
7 of view?

8 Q Yes.

9 A Yes.

10 Q All right, so your
11 preference does not necessarily mean that it becomes
12 prime?

13 A I presume that follows.

14 Q All right, it is just
15 that I am trying to chase down the meaning of the
16 word "prime".

17 Mr. Dau, or Mr. Williams,
18 in route selection, what attention was paid to special
19 places of local and especially native people such
20 as burial sites and archaeological sites and traditional
21 camping places and traditional camping places and
22 traditional fishing spots and this sort of thing?

23 A We are not aware of
24 any conflict with such sites at the present moment.
25 We would obviously do everything we could to avoid
26 them. I am not aware of any at the present moment on
27 the route selection that we have prepared.

28 Q All right, if I were
29 to suggest to you that you have a compressor station
30 on what is popularly known as Big Eddy, would you be

1 able to agree or disagree from your knowledge of
2 what is called the prime route?

3 A I do not know where that
4 is, sir.

5 Q On the Husky Channel.
6 Mr. Watson gives the appearance of having some know-
7 ledge on that question, perhaps he could assist us.

8 WITNESS WATSON:

9 A You are referring to the
10 location of the compressor station in that area?

11 Q Yes.

12 A There is a compressor
13 station in the area that you mentioned immediately west
14 of Husky Channel on the west side of the delta.

15 Q And is that near what is
16 popularly known as Big Eddy?

17 A I am not familiar with what
18 is popularly known as Big Eddy.

19 Q All right, if I were to
20 suggest to you then that it is, you would not be able to
21 comment one way or the other? And if I were to suggest
22 to you that Big Eddy is a very important fishing
23 spot to certain peoples in the delta you would not be
24 able to comment on that then, I take it?

25 A Not personally, perhaps
26 our environmental consultants would be able to comment
27 on that when their panel comes up.

28 Q All right.

29 Do you know, either Mr. Dau
30 or Mr. Watson, of any inventories of such sites, either

Dau, Williams
Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 the archaeological and burial type of sites or
2 traditional camping, hunting and fishing spots that
3 has been conducted by any of your consultants or any
4 consultants known to you for Arctic Gas?

5 WITNESS DAU:

6 A NOrthern Engineering did
7 not retain such consultants, but it is my understanding
8 that there was an archaeologist at the April seminar,
9 that I believe had been retained by Arctic Gas

10 Q Did he plot these
11 archaeological sites for you?

12 A I am not sure. Perhaps
13 Mr. Williams --

14 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

15 A I am sorry -- I have for-
16 gotten the name of the archaeologist that was at the
17 meeting, but he did present, as I recall an hour --
18 a half -- or three-quarters of an hour talk on
19 archeaology aspects of the route and did point out, I
20 think, a couple of possibilities that occurred near
21 to the route but not on the route. -- and I am really
22 not certain if those studies are going on now
23 or not. Someone from Arctic Gas would have to answer
24 that.

25 Q To your knowledge was
26 the route changed to accomodate any sites with which
27 it conflicted? Perhaps Mr. Watson can answer that as
28 I see that he is getting ready to --

29 WITNESS WATSON: : A I recall a discussion of
30 a borrow site at a creek bed, it seems to me it was

1 north of Fort Good Hope, not too far, where we had
2 suggested a borrow site and I think the archaeologist,
3 I wish I could remember his name, suggested that that
4 not be done.

5 Q Perhaps you wish to
6 consult that volume that Mr. Dau was showing you.

7 A His name is -- Miller.
8 M.I.L.L.A.R., J.F.V., initials.

9 Q This was the archaeolo-
10 gist that you are referring to?

11 A Yes.

12 MR. MARSHALL: We would propose
13 to call evidence as part of the environmental phase
14 of the hearings pertaining to archaeological matters
15 and I would refer my friend to the archaeological
16 supplement that has been published as part of the
17 biological report series where you will find Dr. Millar's
18 report.

19 MR. BAYLY: Yes, Mr. Commissioner
20 I am aware of that report, I just wanted to know if
21 it was considered in prime route selection.

22 Q Now, you were cross-
23 examined as a panel on the question of looping the
24 line and I am wondering whether a schedule has been
25 proposed for looping.

26 WITNESS DAU:

A No, sir .

27 Q And you have already
28 stated that in your opinion the additional lines re-
29 quired for looping could be accomodated in the 120'
30 right-of-way plus 20 feet, is that correct?

1
2 A I believe I said
3 approximately, there would be areas where that may
4 vary. We have not done a study to determine precisely
5 what is required. It is not a large area that is
6 required.

7 Q Have any studies been done
8 which would suggest one way or the other, whether two
9 pipelines that close together would be too close
10 to be safe and would be too close in light of the kinds
11 of soils they were going through?

12 A No.
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 Q No studies of
2 that sort?

3 WITNESS DAU: Not by us, not
4 by Northern.

5 Q And with regard to what
6 you've referred to as Gibson Gap or Gibson Pass, would
7 it be possible to loop the line and run two lines
8 through that very narrow pass and still have them an
9 appropriate distance apart?

10 A Yes sir.

11 Q All right, now I've
12 used that word "appropriate", I suppose I borrowed it
13 from you. What is an appropriate distance apart?

14 A Again, we've not performed
15 any studies to determine what that should be. Off the
16 top of my head, something on the order of 20 or 30
17 feet, I think, would be appropriate, but it would
18 obviously require study.

19 Q Yes.

20 A There are many pipelines
21 that have been looped with closer spacing than that.

22 Q Now, you have biologists
23 on your staff, Mr. Dau, is that correct, plant biologists?

24 A Botanists, yes.

25 Q Now, if I were to suggest
26 to you that if looping occurred fairly early on, that
27 the recovery rates of the pioneer grass species that
28 would have started on the pipeline route, that their
29 recovery rate is much slower if they are intruded upon
30 before they have a chance to get properly established?

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A That sounds reasonable,
2 sir, but you'd have to discuss it with them.

3 Q Have any studies been
4 done on that aspect from the point of view of looping
5 this line on the prime route?

6 A Not to my knowledge, I'm
7 pretty sure they haven't, sir.

8 Q So these again would
9 be among the studies that have to be done in order to
10 consider looping at all?

11 A Yes, I'm sure that's
12 correct.

13 Q Mr. Watson, you have
14 referred in cross-examination to alignment sheets
15 regarding the routing of the proposed highway and
16 its relation to the proposed prime route, and you said
17 that you had some that were perhaps not entirely up
18 to date, and I'm wondering -- but that they were
19 moderately up to date -- and I'm wondering if these are
20 documents that you have in your possession?

21 WITNESS WATSON: Yes, I do.

22 Q And I'm wondering, Mr.
23 Commissioner, if Mr. Marshall can either tell me that
24 these have already been listed as documents, or can
25 produce those for us?

26 A These are a
27 set of working alignment sheets that I have with me.
28 They are the same sheets that are filed. I just
29 made a few changes where there have been variations
30 from the highway route between the filing and the

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 present date.

2 Q You have up-dated then
3 the alignment drawings that are submitted as Exhibit
4 67 and following?

5 A No, I haven't. All I
6 have done is pencilled that line on a set of drawings
7 of my own. We have not up-dated the originals.

8 MR. BAYLY: All right, I'm
9 wondering, Mr. Commissioner, if we could have the
10 benefit of those perhaps put in as an exhibit?

11 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
12 it seems to me that there is no difficulty at all in
13 making Mr. Watson's alignment sheets with his pencilled
14 notes containing information obtained from the D.P.W.
15 available for inspection. I see no point really in
16 putting them ⁱⁿ as a separate exhibit. If Mr. Bayly would
17 like to have them examined, we could make arrangements
18 for that right now if you like, you could examine
19 these, or if you want to do it at a later date, the
20 witness has indicated that he has got some information
21 from the D.P.W., more recent than that Arctic Gas had
22 at the time the application was filed, but they're
23 not completely up to date, and it might be rather
24 misleading to put the matter into evidence.

25 MR. BAYLY: Well, Mr. Commissioner,
26 I can satisfy myself by looking at the document . The
27 question is whether you will be satisfied if I look at
28 the document , and --

29 MR. ANTHONY: Mr. Commissioner,
30 I'm sorry, I raised the issue in cross-examination, and

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 it was my understanding at that time that that informa-
2 tion would be made available to the Inquiry, and I am
3 trying to find it in the transcript and am unable at
4 the moment, but it certainly was my understanding.

5 MR. BAYLY: I'm quite prepared
6 to leave this point while the transcript is being
7 examined and come back to it at the end of my cross-
8 examination, Mr. Commissioner.

9 Q Now, Mr. Dau, if I could
10 go to your criteria for route selection on page 7 of
11 your summary of evidence, and looking at point 1,

12 "The proximity of the pipeline to other known
13 and probable future sources of supply,"

14 now I take it that some of the known sources of
15 supply are the five clusters of wells that Mr. Ballem
16 and his clients are interested in.

17 A Yes.

18 Q Would you tell us from
19 your knowledge and with regard to the selection of
20 this as the prime route, what other known sources of
21 supply are in the area of the prime route, and what
22 other probable and future sources of supply are contem-
23 plated in the prime route, and I don't expect you to
24 give me exact map references, but I'd like to know what
25 sort of a field you're looking at in your prime
26 route selection.

27 A Can I have one moment
28 to find a map?

29 Q Certainly.

30 A Sir, one of the alternative

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 drawings that lists or has a map that shows potential
2 supply areas-- I can't find it right now -- Section
3 14-E, Mr. Marshall.

4 Q Reference could be given
5 so that the Commissioner could be looking at the same
6 map that you're looking at.

7 A This document is entitled
8 "Alternative corridor drawings,"
9 sub-section 14.e.1.10. I believe it's Exhibit 60.

10 Q Looking at a specific
11 map, Mr. Dau?

12 A It's about the third
13 page in, drawing number is 4-0204-1014, revision 2.

14 Q May I read that back to
15 you because I don't know if I've got it. 4-2004-1014
16 division 2.

17 A I think that second
18 series of numbers are reversed. 0204.

19 Q 0204, thank you. Mr.
20 Commissioner, have you got that? Could you tell us
21 then, Mr. Dau, what --

22 A Yes, this map shows the
23 geo -- provinces and basins and I'm referring specific-
24 ally to the north slope, is an Arctic slope basin and
25 extends from Prudhoe eastward across the north slope
26 of Alaska and Canada. Obviously it's my understanding
27 that has a potential, it shows the location of the
28 Mackenzie Delta, Beaufort Basin, and continuing down
29 the Anderson Plain all the way down the line. I won't
30 go into all of them, but there are --

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 Q Could I stop just for
2 a minute?

3 A Certainly.

4 Q When you say "all the way
5 down the line" do you mean all the way down the proposed
6 pipeline route?

7 A Yes, to the 60th Parallel.

8 Q So the sedimentary basin
9 then continues right the way up river, is that correct?

10 A That's correct. It also
11 indicates that there are areas, for instance, in the
12 interior and the Yukon, that are not -- have no poten-
13 tial and are not sedimentary basins. There are some,
14 of course, in the Yukon that are, that have sedimentary
15 basins, that have some potential. Now I'm not qualified
16 to rank them. I understand, I suppose there will
17 be other witnesses who could do that.

18 Q So it is possible then
19 that, because there is a possibility of finding gas all
20 the way up the river, that the -- a very important
21 reason for selecting this as the prime route, is that
22 the pipeline travels up the same river.

23 A I think it would be more
24 to the point along the Arctic coast, sir. On this
25 map it clearly indicates that the interior route passes
26 through a rather extensive area that has no potential,
27 where the coastal route passes by an area that apparently
28 has a potential.

29 Q And is one of the other
30 reasons because of the possibility of piping gas from

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 eastern Arctic fields to this line as well?

2 A By "eastern Arctic"
3 you're referring to islands?

4 Q Yes.

5 A No, I wouldn't think
6 so, sir.

7 Q So this prime route then
8 would be, in your estimation, preferable not only for
9 other factors, but for the fact that there is, on the
10 north slope of the Yukon, a high possibility of finding
11 future gas supplies there, and as well down the -- or
12 up the Anderson River and up the Mackenzie?

13 A Yes sir.

14 MR. BAYLY: Mr. Commissioner,
15 with the exception of the question that I had asked
16 regarding the -- Mr. Watson's knowledge of the highway
17 route changes, which I understand from Mr. Marshall
18 may not be entirely up to date, I've finished my cross-
19 examination. I would like to be able to find in the
20 transcript just what Mr. Genest did say about these
21 but I don't want to delay this morning's proceedings,
22 and perhaps if I could be allowed to reserve my right
23 to ask that question after Mr. Scott has completed
24 his cross-examination, with one exception, I with one
25 exception have concluded. I have one set of questions
26 and that is going back to 3.11 and just following up
27 Mr. Williams, your answers to Mr. Bell. I take it --
28 and I'm referring to page 21 of that report -- that
29 not only were the people Mr. Bell referred to, not
30 consulted about the routing of the pipeline over their

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Bayly
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 traplines, but that neither were the following people:
2 Ida Joe, David Husky, Danny Gordon, Eddie McLeod, and
3 John Lenny, as well as the 50 trappers in the group
4 trapping area in Old Crow.

5 Would that be fair to
6 say?

7 WITNESS WILLIAMS: I can cer-
8 tainly say that no one from Northern Engineering contac-
9 ted these people with respect to the route location.
10 I think I did say earlier that I was sure that other
11 people had.

12 MR. BAYLY:
13 All right, that was what
14 I meant by your company. I have no further questions
15 at this time, Mr. Commissioner.

16 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT:

17 Q Mr. Dau, I had occasion
18 earlier to pass a comment about the weather to one of
19 the members of the panel. I presume that when you give
20 evidence before the Federal Power Commission you won't
21 list me as a consultant without the appropriate remuneration.
22 I'd like to begin by asking some general
23 questions which may lead you to say, "Where has he been
24 for the last two or three days?" But which are designed
25 so that I at least will understand the process.

26 Now in the first place th
27 is going to be Arctic Gas' pipeline, is that correct?

28 A That's my understanding,
29 sir, yes.

30 Q And that your function is

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 consultants to them, and that means that your obliga-
2 tion is to make recommendations to them and in this
3 context recommendations with respect to route.

4 A Yes.

5 Q And whether they act on
6 those recommendations or not is for them to decide.

7 A Yes.

8 Q Well now, after they have
9 made a determination with respect to your recommenda-
10 tions, I take it that applications are made to the
11 Minister for an easement and to the National Energy
12 Board for a certificate of necessity, or whatever it's
13 called.

14 A Yes.

15 Q And at that stage you
16 really have done three things: You have done a
17 preliminary route selection; you have had input from
18 various consultants to determine the adequacy or the
19 propriety of that route; and you have selected a prime
20 route.

21 A Yes.

22 Q And the application to
23 the Minister or to the Energy Board at this stage is
24 fundamentally based on the alignment sheets that are
25 an exhibit here.

26 A Yes.

27 Q And those alignment
28 sheets only locate the route with respect to the scale
29 that is used on the sheets themselves.

30 A I think I know what

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 you mean, yes. You're saying that we can't precisely
2 go out in the field and say, "Within a foot this is
3 where we are."

4 Q Yes, it's even a little
5 more than that.

6 A Yes.

7 Q You can't say within 50
8 feet.

9 A That is correct.

10 Q And therefore what con-
11 fronts the National Energy Board at this stage is a
12 prime route selected by the applicant, after your
13 advice, which in a general way discloses the route
14 that will be followed by reference to the alignment
15 sheets.

16 A I would think in a general
17 way it's too broad, at least in my definition of
18 in a general way.

19 Q All right. Well now let
20 us assume that the certificate is granted by the
21 Energy Board.

22 A Yes sir.

23 Q I take it that at that
24 stage you are already moving toward final design.

25 A Moving towards it, yes.

26 Q In the sense that you
27 are doing the terrain analysis, the engineering work,
28 the design work that is necessary to produce a final
29 workable design.

30 A Yes.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q And that is a continuing
2 process.

3 A Yes.

4 Q And I take it that as you
5 approach final design, one of the things you do is you
6 survey.

7 A Yes.

8 Q And the survey enables
9 you to precisely or much more precisely locate the line
10 with reference to the alignment sheets.

11 A That is correct. It's my
12 understanding that the National Energy Board, for
13 instance, requires a plan, profile and book of
14 reference. This plan, profile and book of reference
15 is developed from an engineering survey that locates
16 the right-of-way in relation to other legal boundaries.
17 It defines the extent of lands that are required, and
18 it lists the ownership of the lands. This document
19 has to be approved before you get leave to construct.

20 Q Yes, I was coming to that.

21 A I'm sorry.

22 Q Substantially all that
23 work in which the line is designed and the line is
24 placed with precision on the drawings is done tradi-
25 tionally after the certificate of necessity is granted.

26 A Yes.

27 Q And then when you have
28 done that, you go back to the Energy Board with an
29 application that precisely details the location of the
30 line and ask for permission.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Yes.

2 Q And I take it that when
3 you go back as a matter of practice to the Energy Board,
4 you will have made many alterations in the locating of
5 the line.

6 A From that shown on the --

7 Q Alignment sheets.

8 A -- originally filed
9 alignment sheets, yes.

10 Q And those alterations
11 will be dictated by a variety of factors, such as
12 economics, the actual terrain you find when you go
13 on the ground, design problems or features.

14 A Yes.

15 Q So that we must
16 recognize, must we not, that the alignment sheets are
17 only a general guide to the location that may ultimately
18 be developed.

19 A Again, with the defini-
20 tion of "general", it's the best we can do at this
21 stage.

22 Q All right. Well let us
23 assume, I think what you're saying is, it's the best
24 you can do without spending a whole lot of money and
25 going over the route foot by foot, as you will ultimately
26 have to do.

27 A That's correct.

28 Q Well now, let us assume
29 the Energy Board gives permission to construct. I take
30 it that even after that, there will be in the normal

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 course, revisions of a more minor type which will be
2 dictated by particular design problems, or particular
3 terrain problems, as you confront them in the course of
4 construction.

5 A As a normal course of
6 events, yes sir.

7 Q And that at that stage,
8 you make what is called, I think, a request for
9 revision approval of the National Energy Board.

10 A Yes.

11 Q And they grant, I take it,
12 at that stage it's almost a matter of course, one
13 hopes, I suppose, they grant a revision approval.

14 A Yes sir.

15 Q Well now, let me just
16 ask you one or two other questions. Are you able to
17 tell us what your timetable is with respect to final
18 engineering design and with respect to the survey
19 work that will be necessary for the second National
20 Energy Board application?

21 A The permit -- and I'm
22 just picking dates for illustrations -- if we obtained
23 the necessary regulatory approval on January 1, 1976,
24 --

25 Q And you're talking about
26 the certificate of necessity?

27 A Yes, from the National
28 Energy Board and the financing is complete and we're
29 ready to go.

30 Q Yes.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Prior to that date we
2 hopefully would have some confidence that we were going
3 to get such approval , and we would be getting ready
4 and doing some of the more important locations such as
5 at river crossings, which are key locations. Some
6 of that work would have been done at that stage. If
7 the construction is to start on November 1 in the
8 winter of 1977-78, we have a period of time, that's
9 approximately 20 months, to do the type of work with
10 respect to survey and detail location that you're
11 talking about, that is sufficient time to be ready to
12 allow construction starting on November 1, 1977-78,
13 recognizing that we're not going to be working on
14 every section of this pipeline simultaneously. In
15 other words, it will be phased. If the construction
16 program takes place over three winters, and two
17 summers, obviously we don't have to have all of
18 the survey done in the first initial phase.

19 Q But I take it that
20 what that means in practical terms is that between now
21 and the drawings on the alignment sheets, you will
22 have to do very substantial on-the-ground terrain
23 analysis and survey and design work to ascertain with
24 any real precision where the pipeline will go and how
25 it will be constructed.

26 A I'm not quite sure what
27 you mean by "more extensive terrain analysis".

28 Q I'll give you an example,
29 if I can. When Mr. Gibbs was talking about the Ebbutt
30 Hills, the other day, Dr. Mollard indicated that

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that wasn't the easiest part of the line and that
2 there might be some problems there, and I take it that
3 those problems won't be found really by flying a plane
4 20 miles above the surface of the earth; they will be
5 found by going into the ground and doing a detailed
6 analysis of what you find there, and applying to it
7 whatever construction techniques you can devise.

8 A Yes, I understand your
9 question.

10 Q And it may be, as Dr.
11 Mollard said, that having done that work, it may be
12 necessary to move the line five or ten miles, I
13 think was his phrase -- it was just offhand obviously
14 -- one way or the other if the problems are serious
15 and if the design solutions aren't available.

16 A I think those numbers
17 five or ten miles are far too great. It's not, in
18 my view, it's not necessary -- there would not be a move
19 of that magnitude, but I agree --

20 Q Say five miles?

21 A Beg your pardon?

22 Q Say five miles?

23 A A lateral movement, in
24 my view, of a few miles, two, three, something like
25 that, could solve the problem. But I agree with you
26 that there are critical areas and that is one.

27 Q I take it to be fair --
28 I'm sorry.

29 A That is one. There
30 appears to be some concern with respect to the stability

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 of the Ebbutt Hills. Quite obviously we would want
2 a program, a drilling program to determine precisely
3 what's there. It would be very similar to a critical
4 location such as at a river crossing.
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Dau, Williams
Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q So that I take it when
2 you get to that work, that work may produce a reasonably
3 substantial location change?

4 A It could sir.

5 Q Yes, and of course we
6 are not talking about a location change merely at the
7 Ebbutt Hills because it will affect the line of the
8 pipeline for some area before you get to the Ebbutt
9 Hills and afterwards.

10 A That is correct.

11 Q Yes, a pipeline does not
12 bend at right angles to accomodate a particular problem?

13 A That is correct.

14 Q Yes, and I take it that
15 there are other critical areas all up and down the route,
16 particularly at river crossings where this kind of
17 thing will occur.

18 A That is correct.

19 Q And furthermore there are
20 critical areas, I suggest to you that you do not even
21 know about yet and will not until you get out there.

22 A That is correct.

23 Q Well, let me ask Dr.
24 Mollard, if I may, one or two questions about his
25 role. I think I understand what it was. I understand,
26 Doctor, that -- and in answering these questions I
27 ask you not to concern yourself with the other corridors
28 that you examined and not to concern yourself for
29 the moment with the Travaillant Lake and north shore
30 parts, just think of the corridor that runs from

1 Richards Island down the east side of the river to
2 the Alberta border and I take it that as you said in
3 your evidence the other day, you were given a corridor
4 of about ten to fifteen miles.

5 WITNESS MOLLARD:

6 A Well, that was early,
7 yes --

8 Q Yes, and then you were
9 able to reduce that down to a corridor with the
10 aid of photographs, of four to nine miles depending on
11 the scale of the photograph?

12 A Well, I examined -- I
13 think what Mr. Dau was referring to there was early
14 in the study we did this broad regional examination and
15 then I looked at a narrower corridor at that time going
16 back to 1971. At that time I do not think that the
17 route that you are referring to on the east side was
18 in the picture.

19 Q Well, let me ask you this.
20 When did you begin to look at a corridor, let us say,
21 four to nine miles that coincides with the Richards
22 Island/ Alberta border prime route?

23 A Well I examined --

24 Q Well, just tell me the
25 time, Doctor, if you will -- when did you begin to
26 do that?

27 A Well, I examined the
28 whole corridor back in -- prior to '71 -- that is,
29 as I mentioned, from sort of mountain peak to mountain
30 peak, and at that time I looked at a corridor of this

1 varying width through the valley.

2 Q All right, and I take it
3 that your task was, dealing just with that corridor,
4 at the moment, your task was essentially to prepare a
5 map for your client which showed the terrain as you
6 had analysed it and which ultimately is the alignment
7 sheet? Any doubt about that?

8 A I am just trying to think
9 back. I think the object of that exercise was to
10 get an assessment of the terrain along that broad band,
11 rather than the narrow, narrow band.

12 Q Well, ultimately, Doc-
13 tor, you produced a map which has ~~the~~ markings on it
14 as shown I think on the alignment sheets, in which you
15 describe the terrain.

16 A That is right.

17 Q Yes. Now, what I want
18 to know is this. I take it that apart from your
19 consultative function, your prime function was to pro-
20 duce those maps.

21 A Maps that are in the
22 alignment --

23 Q Yes --

24 A Yes -- that is right.

25 Q All right, now what I
26 want to ask you is when were you able to produce maps
27 that dealt with the corridor from Richards Island to the
28 Alberta border?

29 A Well, they came as they
30 were sent to us by the client. The strips were sent

1 to us and we terrain typed them, and that --

2 Q Yes, but I take it that
3 the terrain typing was done for this part of the line
4 by 1971.

5 A No, I am sure that it was
6 not.

7 Q Well, when was it done?

8 A In '72 --

9 Q When in '72 do you think
10 that it was complete ?

11 A Well, we have been doing
12 it on and off since '72 as the alignment sheets came in
13 and the --

14 Q Well, would you agree with
15 me that your terrain typing maps -- I am talking only
16 about the corridor Richards Island down to ALberta --

17 A Yes --

18 Q -- was substantially'
19 done by 1972.

20 A No, I am sure that a lot
21 of it was done after that. The Travaillant Lake area
22 and --

23 Q I am concerned about that,
24 Doctor, because the "canned" evidence, if I can use that
25 expression, reveals that a route was given to the
26 consultants at a certain period of time and I presume
27 that a route would not have been selected without
28 your terrain analysis map. Now, does that help you
29 to tell me when you got into the hands of Northern
30 Engineering the terrain analysis map that deals with

1 this corridor in substance?

2 A Well, I really cannot tell
3 you the date because we did it over such a period of time
4 and -- I think the major part of it was done in '72
5 though, that would be my recollection -- '72-'73 --

6 Q That is what I thought --
7 all right.

8 Now, I take it that after the
9 maps are prepared your function is to be available to
10 be consulted and to help answer any questions that you
11 can.

12 A Yes, if I am asked.
13 if

13 Q Yes, /you are asked.
14 --And it is not your obligation to make any judgment as
15 to the type of terrain that is best suited for the
16 construction of the pipeline unless you happen to be
17 asked.

18 A Well, as I mentioned,
19 I discussed terrain types and the various terrain units
20 with the people at Northern engineering on several
21 occasions and /one point in time I had three of them --
at

22 Q I know that, Dr. Mollard --

23 A Yes --

24 Q But you are not responsible
25 for selection of this route and responsible for the
26 engineering characteristics --

27 A That is right --

28 Q Exactly. That is the
29 function of somebody else.

30 A That is right. --

1 Q You provide the maps and
2 answer questions, is that not right?

3 A That is right.

4 Q And I take it further that
5 you do not make any judgment about the design techniques
6 that may be required to overcome route problems on a
7 route that in fact is selected by somebody else.

8 A That is right.

9 Q And I take it that at
10 least at that stage you do not give any advice unless
11 you are asked, any sort of mile by mile advice on
12 routing of the pipeline.

13 A That is right.

14 Q You are a mapmaker.

15 A In this particular project,
16 as I said, I identify, classify and map the
17 terrain --

18 Q Exactly.

19 Well, now I put it to you
20 that that was done at least substantially over three
21 years ago -- the terrain typing -- for this part -- I
22 am not talking about the new filings.

23 A No, I would think not.

24 Q Did you ever hear, Dr.
25 Mollard, that a route had been selected without your
26 terrain typing?

27 A No.

28 Q That would strike you
29 as very odd -- courageous, perhaps almost foolhardy,
30 would it not? Wouldn't it?

1 A Well, I would think that
2 it would be desirable to have my terrain typing.

3 Q Yes, -- dangerous
4 not to have it -- Right?

5 A It would depend on who
6 selected the route and their background of experience,
7 I would think.

8 Q Well, now in response
9 to question number 17 of the Government Assessment
10 Group which is contained in the response volume --
11 I do not know the Exhibit Number, sir, at page 17 -1,
12 the third paragraph, the first sentence reads: "When
13 the terrain typing has reached a reasonable level of
14 reliability, it can be used with confidence to locate
15 the pipeline within fairly narrow corridors. This
16 level of reliability was obtained by the applicant
17 and its consultants over three years ago."

18 Now, would you agree that you
19 obtained an adequate level of reliability in respect
20 of terrain typing over three years before this
21 response was filed?

22 A Yes -- I --

23 Q That is what your client
24 says -- what do you say?

25 A Yes, I think that that
26 is a fair statement and --

27 Q So the terrain typing
28 was done over three years ago?

29 A No, not all of the ter-
30 rain typing on the Travaillant Lake --

1 Q On the corridor that we
2 are talking about from Richards Island down to the
3 Alberta border -- leave aside the additional filings
4 and the alternative routes.

5 A Yes, I think that --

6 Q So this statement in
7 the response is accurate?

8 Are you worried about it? If
9 it is inaccurate, tell us .

10 A Well, I was going to say
11 that in the context that I read it -- I would say that
12 in my view I did have a good level of confidence over
13 three years ago for the whole corridor and to answer
14 that in more detail, last night for the first time I
15 was comparing the documents in -- from what you are
16 reading there and I was looking at one terrain type,
17 for example, D-L and that was very early, I think in 1971
18 1971, November '71 and we had six or seven holes in
19 D-L and I had drawn a profile of the terrain type and
20 the materials at that time in 1971.

21 Then in the next, a little further
22 back in that document, there is another one of D-L
23 when they show 527 holes versus seven and the strati-
24 graphy that I had after seven holes was essentially
25 the same as what is shown on the 527 holes.

26 Q Doctor, I do not
27 want to cut you off, but I also want to help you catch
28 your plane --

29 A Yes, okay -- thank you --

30 Q Let me go on . Would you

1 agree with me that since three years ago when your
2 terrain typing was substantially done, later data
3 has not altered any of your views in a significant way?

4 A I would not say that
5 it has altered my views in a significant way.

6 Q Well, now I would like
7 to turn to Mr. Watson, if I may -- do you want, Mr.
8 Commissioner to take your break or is it too early?

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Whatever
10 suits you..

11 MR. SCOTT: It is a good
12 time.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
14 we will adjourn for ten minutes.

15 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR TEN MINUTES)
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: Mr. Watson, I understand from your evidence that you were responsible, in the first place, for plotting information that you obtained on the maps prior to preliminary route selection.

WITNESS WATSON: I think what you're referring to in my preliminary evidence, I mentioned that I was responsible for gathering the data from various sources and getting it placed on the alignment sheets.

Q Yes, that's what I meant.

A O.K.

Q And I take it that at an early stage there would have been someone who would have taken a pencil in hand and perhaps a ruler and started to draw on the basis of the information at hand, a preliminary route.

A Yes, that's correct.

Q And I take it, though, you were no doubt responsible to Mr. Williams and others up the chain, that that was really your preliminary responsibility, subject to their judgment of your work.

A Well, this initial route was picked by a number of people. I was one of them but certainly not the only one.

Q Well, let me ask you to turn -- before we do, let's just consider again the

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 route that ultimately became the prime route, that is
2 the route from Richards Island down to the Alberta
3 border without the amendments and without the western
4 leg. Is that all right?

5 A Fine.

6 Q Well now, I take it that
7 anybody would recognize, confronting the problem of
8 drawing a route, that you knew where you were going to
9 start approximately, at Richards Island.

10 A Yes.

11 Q And you knew roughly
12 -- at least if Mr. Gibbs and his client had their
13 way -- of where you were going to end up, at the
14 Alberta border somewhere.

15 A We knew where the end
16 point was, yes.

17 Q So with respect to what
18 ultimately became the prime route, you had a starting
19 point and within some limits, an ending point.

20 A Yes.

21 Q And the problem is to
22 draw a line that connects the two.

23 A Yes.

24 Q And I think as Mr. Dau
25 has said, and subject to amendments that may have been
26 suggested by your consultants, the object is to draw
27 as straight a line as you can, consistent with the
28 safety and security of the line.

29 A Well certainly if there
30 were no other factors involved, a straight line would

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Satt

1 be the most economical.

2 Q Just see if I understand.
3 The first thing you look for, if possible, if there
4 are no other factors, is a straight line.

5 A Yes.

6 Q Then you look to determine
7 whether the straight line creates engineering or
8 design problems that can be foretold.

9 A Yes.

10 Q And that may lead to a
11 deviation from the straight line.

12 A Yes.

13 Q Then you look perhaps
14 to see whether the straight line will in some way
15 damage the security of supply.

16 A Yes, that's a considera-
17 tion.

18 Q You want to cross a smaller
19 river rather than a bigger river, if you can.

20 A M-hm.

21 Q Isn't that so?

22 A Yes.

23 Q And that would be the
24 third consideration, and then of course in this case
25 there were all the inputs that you have described --
26 or that Mr. Dau has described in some detail from your
27 environm ental staff and the socio-economic advice, if
28 any, that was obtained by Arctic Gas.

29 A M-hm.

30 Q Which led to other

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 modifications.

2 A Yes.

3 Q All right. Now let's
4 begin, if we can -- it will be very short, I don't
5 want to take too much time -- with alignment sheet No.
6 1, and I think it's not called No. 1 but it's the first,
7 it's the one that shows the Richard Island start, it's
8 1-A-0200-1001. It's in Exhibit 62.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: What's the
10 number again?

11 MR. SCOTT: It's the first
12 map, sir, I think, in the book. The number is 1-A-0200-
13 1001.

14 A We have that.

15 Q Thank you. Well, I take
16 it you've told us, you began and insofar as possible
17 with the straight line principle.

18 A Yes, that's correct.

19 Q And ideally, all you
20 would need is a ruler and a pencil and you could draw
21 one right down to Alberta, ideally.

22 A Ideally, yes.

23 Q And you cleave to that
24 ideal as closely as you can, bearing in mind the other
25 considerations that are set out in Mr. Dau's evidence.

26 A Yes.

27 Q And the starting point
28 is shown as HP about half-way along that alignment sheet,
29 isn't it?

30 A HP refers to a heli-pad.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 The little square there is the actual location --

2 Q I see, all right. The
3 square is the starting point.

4 A That's correct.

5 Q Well now, the first thing
6 that I see is a kink in the line. It seems to me if I
7 had taken a ruler that I would have drawn from that
8 square right over to the little point below the lake
9 and then I would have had the most economical line
10 because it would be a straight line.

11 A Yes, I guess that's --

12 Q Isn't that so, that that
13 would have obviously been a straight line.

14 A That would have been a
15 straight line, yes.

16 Q Well now, are you able to
17 guess -- you may not have the details, but are you able
18 to guess why you didn't do that in this case?

19 A As you mentioned, I don't
20 have the details of this particular section. I would
21 guess that probably the reason that line isn't straight
22 is because of the water crossings and between, and that
23 it was meant to facilitate a more desirable crossing.

24 Q So what I'm suggesting
25 to you is that in drawing that line, you didn't really
26 begin from the square at all, you went first to the
27 water crossing and said, "We're going to have to cross
28 that river, where is the best place to cross it?"

29 A Well, when we got down
30 to this level of alignment, I think that they started

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 at the starting point and there are key points along
2 the line which we attempt to get in as straight a line
3 as possible, and certainly one of them is river
4 crossings, others are lakes and mountain ranges, areas
5 of potential buoyancy and so on.

6 Q Well, Mr. Watson, just
7 let me ask you, if I'm right about this, and leave aside
8 the environmental consultants and the socio-economists
9 for the moment and let's just look at this as engineers,
10 but that would not be accurate. You look at it as an
11 engineer, seeking the most economical and secure
12 route, and I take it that when you began to plan this
13 line you made certain decisions. First of all you wanted
14 to cleave as closely to the straight line as you could.

15 A That's correct.

16 Q The second thing, as a
17 general matter, you would have decided fairly early,
18 is that you wanted, generally speaking, to come down
19 the east side of the river.

20 A Yes.

21 Q The third thing you would
22 have decided, generally speaking, is that you didn't
23 want to go through any lakes and you didn't want to
24 go over any high mountains.

25 A That's correct.

26 Q And in fact you were
27 pretty successful at avoiding lakes, all things
28 considered, weren't you?

29 A Yes.

30 Q And I take it that after

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that, you saw very quickly that the critical factor in
2 planning your route was going to be the necessity to
3 cross rivers and valleys.

4 A They are certainly a
5 critical item on the route, yes.

6 Q I put it to you that
7 having assumed the other things, you want to come down
8 the east side, that you want to go a straight line,
9 that you want to avoid lakes and mountains, wouldn't
10 it be fair to say that they become the most critical
11 factor that ~~led~~-- that may lead to a variation of the
12 straight line?

13 A I think that's a fair
14 assumption.

15 Q Yes, and I therefore
16 suggest to you that looking back on it and leaving
17 out the consultants and the socio-economists for a
18 moment, your exercise was really to try, from the maps
19 and the other information you had, to select at each
20 location, the best river crossing or valley crossing
21 that you could.

22 A Bearing in mind the
23 other things that we've talked about, including the
24 straight line.

25 Q Yes, and that then when
26 you had selected the best river crossing or valley
27 crossing at each location, I don't want to over-simplify
28 it, but wouldn't it in engineering term become a
29 question of joining the dots?

30 A Well, you would look at

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that and try to deviate from a straight line as little
2 as possible, yes.

3 Q Yes, but having selected
4 the crossings that are in as close to a straight line
5 as you can, and as good as you can get them, then you
6 simply join up the lines. Wouldn't that be fair, as
7 a general principle?

8 A You look at a straight
9 line between these points and select the best route
10 between them.

11 Q Yes, and I take it that
12 having done that, you were forced, from time to time,
13 to go over all kinds of terrain that Dr. Mollard had
14 typed for you.

15 A We probably crossed most
16 of the terrain types, if not all that he has classified,
17 yes.

18 Q I suggest to you that
19 with the exception of the highest mountains, you
20 probably crossed every little designation that he
21 set out on his terrain type, that's very likely, isn't
22 it?

23 A It's quite probable, yes.

24 Q And I take it therefore
25 that when you have selected the river crossings and
26 the valley crossings and drawn as straight a line as
27 you can, with those considerations in mind, you're
28 really saying that, "Our engineers are confident that,"
29 -- and perhaps there is every reason why they should
30 be, we haven't come to them yet -- "Our engineers are

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 confident that the terrain difficulties that may be
2 encountered on this straight line approach can be
3 resolved by design."

4 A I would say that they
5 can be resolved either by design or re-location, if you
6 happen to find something that definitely would indicate
7 that re-location is the best approach.

8 Q But in confronting the
9 problem of building a pipeline and drawing the prelim-
10 inary lines, there were really two ways to avoid
11 problems: One is routing, and one is design; isn't that
12 correct?

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Well, they're used in com-
2 bination.

3 Q Right, but I put it to
4 you that an examination of these maps and the fact that
5 they cross a great variety of terrain illustrates that
6 the design solution is the solution that is going to
7 be called for.

8 A I'm not sure I understand
9 that.

10 Q Well, you would agree with
11 me, wouldn't you, that when the work was done, all
12 things considered, your prime route turned out to be
13 pretty straight.

14 A Yes.

15 Q And notwithstanding its
16 straightness, it crosses all kinds of terrain, from
17 hills and valleys to bogs and rivers and even small
18 lakes and so on.

19 A It crosses most terrains,
20 yes.

21 Q And that really you intend
22 to meet those problems by engineering and design.

23 A Yes.

24 Q And wouldn't it be fair
25 to say then that the route was selected -- excuse me,
26 let me begin again -- leave aside the input from your
27 environmentalists, wouldn't it be fair to say that
28 the route was selected on a straight line method, it
29 being understood that design would be able to take
30 care of most, if not all of the terrain features

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that were encountered.

2 A No. The line, as you
3 pointed out at the start, isn't a straight line.

4 Q No, but it's -- I put it
5 to you that where it is not a straight line, it is not
6 a straight line because of the river crossings, prim-
7 arily, or valley crossings.

8 A That is one of the
9 reasons for deviating from a straight line. There
10 are others.

11 Q All right, let me put
12 this to you. Having selected the river and valley
13 crossings, having joined up the lines, having crossed
14 all kinds of terrain, I put it to you that at that
15 point you have as straight a line as you can get.

16 A Yes.

17 Q And that thereafter any
18 solutions are going to be primarily design solutions.

19 A Well, I would think that
20 that is probably true, unless it is determined that
21 it is better to re-locate than to design for it,
22 end detail design. This is a phase of detailed design
23 that we will be getting into.

24 Q All right, let me leave
25 that and ask Mr. Dau something. Mr. Dau, in the
26 beginning you told us that -- and I think I have it
27 correctly --- that it was your function to make recom-
28 mendations on routing to Arctic Gas, but it was their
29 decision.

30 WITNESS DAU: Yes.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Yes, and I take it that
2 the recommendations you made to them were the best
3 engineering and professional recommendations that you
4 could make.

5 A Yes.

6 Q That question wasn't
7 hard to answer.

8 A That was easy to answer.

9 Q Did Arctic Gas act on
10 all your recommendations as to routing?

11 A I think I tried to
12 discuss that point yesterday or the day before, in that
13 at the time of the merger there were two routes that
14 had been selected at that stage this panel represented
15 Williams Brothers Canada Limited for the Northwest
16 project. There was another group that represented Gas
17 Arctic Systems, who had selected a slightly different
18 route. I think I tried to explain that in some
19 instances Northern Engineering did not go back and re-
20 do --

21 Q Yes, I understand.

22 A -- the work that had previ-
23 ously been done. We examined the route that had been
24 selected and concurred in its location. In that sense
25 we did not do -- we initially did not select all of
26 the route that you're talking about.

27 Q Let me see if I under-
28 stand that precisely. At a certain stage, Williams
29 Brothers had been responsible for route selection, and
30 you did not re-do their work; you simply reviewed it

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 and concurred in the route that they selected.

2 A And I'm quite sure, and
3 I can't point to this specific instance, we came up
4 with some recommendations for minor changes.

5 Q All right, but in any
6 event you made a recommendation to Arctic Gas to
7 the new consortium, to accept that route.

8 A Yes sir.

9 Q All right. Now what I'm
10 asking you is, in the barrel of routing recommendations
11 you made to your client, have you ever been turned down
12 on a routing recommendation? Now if you aren't
13 able to answer that precisely, maybe Mr. Marshall can
14 because I want to know what the recommendation was that
15 was turned down.

16 A I can't specifically give
17 you an example that we said, "You should locate it
18 here," and they said, "No, we want it here." I'm not
19 aware of any of that type of a rejection of a recommen-
20 dation.

21 Q I take it that you would
22 have records of the recommendations you made on routing.

23 A They exist as working
24 paper documents in working copies of alignment sheets.
25 If I could back up, sir, this also has to be in the
26 context of delivery locations. For instance, if the
27 delivery location in Alberta, at one particular time was
28 -- I can recall one that was at a location called
29 Gold Creek, and at that particular instance we had a
30 route that was west of Camsell Bend. That resulted in

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 recommendation of a certain line, as delivery location
2 changed we kept, you know, we had to move the section
3 of line.

4 Q Yes, but in that case
5 you would make a recommendation to your client as to
6 the new location of the line to take account of the new
7 delivery station.

8 A That is correct, yes.

9 Q Now what I'm asking, your
10 counsel I suppose, is for a list and details of
11 any recommendations with respect to routing made by
12 your company which were modified or refused by your
13 client. I understand that you mightn't have that here.
14 Well now, Mr. Dau, your evidence, in its written form
15 and your evidence before the tribunal indicates that
16 I think in 1972, perhaps a little earlier, you hired a
17 number of environmental consultants, to give you advice.

18 A Yes, I'm not just positive
19 of that date, I think some were working for us prior
20 to that time, but yes, essentially.

21 Q If any socio-economic
22 consultants were advising they weren't hired by you.

23 A That is correct.

24 Q Well now, your evidence
25 also indicates that when they were hired, they were
26 given a copy of the route that was proposed.

27 A Yes.

28 Q And they were asked to
29 do work, I presume, to determine the environmental im-
30 pact of that particular route.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Their first assignment
2 was to gather data.

3 Q Yes.

4 A Obviously.

5 Q All right. Now have you
6 a copy of the route that you gave them? Or can your
7 counsel in due course provide that? I don't need it
8 today but I would like to see the route that was
9 given to the consultants when they were asked to
10 gather data.

11 A I'm not sure. That's
12 again a lot of work paper information; if we have it,
13 obviously, yes, but --

14 MR. MARSHALL: Perhaps I can
15 be of some assistance, Mr. Scott. The various consult-
16 ants, take for example the environmental consultants,
17 working in different areas were retained to do work
18 at various times, and obviously their first assignment
19 was to concentrate on the gathering of base line
20 data. They were provided with information as to route
21 location as it then existed, and were continually
22 kept up to date as revisions were being made in the
23 routing. So they would have received copies of routing
24 changes made from the time they first started through
25 the evolution of the route, if you like to call it.

26 MR. SCOTT: Well, perhaps, Mr.
27 Commissioner, I'm sure this is within the power of my
28 friend, he can provide for me at least initially the
29 routing information or drawing -- the evidence of MR.
30 Dau says a copy of the route that was given to the

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 consultants when they were retained, and I will under-
2 stand that they would have been given subsequent infor-
3 mation when route changes were decided upon.

4 MR. MARSHALL: Which of the
5 consultants? Do you mean all of the consultants? We're
6 talking about a period of many years and many different
7 consultants. If you like, Mr. Scott, I'm sure you
8 could accompany me to Northern Engineering's offices
9 and we could give you --

10 MR. SCOTT: Not a chance.

11 MR. MARSHALL: -- we could
12 show you all the documentation as to changes in
13 route in the very early days of this right through.
14 It seems to me that you perhaps don't appreciate the
15 volume of paper that you've been asking for.

16 Now if you want to get more
17 specific about it, if for example you want information
18 as to the route at the time the environmentalists were
19 being asked to come to the April '73 meeting, that
20 is a fairly easy document to put together for you.

21 MR. SCOTT: Well --

22 MR. MARSHALL: I can certainly
23 give you all the rest if you like, but it will take
24 some time.

25 MR. SCOTT: -- perhaps, Mr.
26 Commissioner, my friend and I could resolve it this
27 way, I could prepare, if advised, a list of the
28 consultants with which we're concerned, and ask him
29 to let me know the route information that was provided
30 to them; and secondly, I gratefully accept his offer

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 to produce the routing information that was given to
2 the environmentalists who came to the April seminar.
3 Perhaps that can be done without taking time of the
4 Inquiry.

5 Q Well now, I take -- I'm
6 sorry.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: You can
8 provide that, can you, Mr. Marshall?

9 MR. MARSHALL: Sir, we
10 certainly -- my understanding is, we certainly can
11 provide the routing information that was given to the
12 environmental and other consultants for purposes of
13 the April 1973 week long meeting that dealt with route.
14 That can be provided, I believe, next week.

15 With respect to the other
16 information, I gather Mr. Scott will give me a list
17 of specific consultants and I'll endeavor to dig up
18 information as to the routing information given to
19 those various consultants, the time they were first
20 retained, and thereafter.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

22 MR. SCOTT: Q Well now, Mr.
23 Dau, I take it that while you obviously saw consultants
24 before and you've seen them after, the meeting in April
25 of 1973 was a key event in terms of environmental and
26 socio-economic input to the route.

27 A Yes.

28 Q And I understand that there
29 are minutes, indeed a transcript of that meeting.

30 A That's my understanding,

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 sir, yes.

2 SCOTT: I wonder if Mr. Marshall
3 can produce that?

4 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott, there
5 is a transcript of the meeting and the follow-up meet-
6 ing that was held later on, and we can make available
7 for your nighttime reading, about six inches, I think,,
8 of material that I'm sure will fascinate you.

9 MR. SCOTT: I'm just going to
10 pass it on to somebody else to read, so it won't be
11 any problem; but I raise that, Mr. Commissioner, be-
12 cause it was listed on the Environment Protection
13 Board's documents but was not intended to be released
14 without the permission of the company, but I'm glad
15 that --

16 MR. MARSHALL: Well, that's
17 perhaps my responsibility, Mr. Scott. It seems to me
18 that wasn't a report or a study but we don't object
19 to producing that information to you.

20 MR. SCOTT: Thank you.

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q And I take it, Mr.

2 Dau, that, as you have indicated in your evidence,
3 that at that meeting and thereafter there were in
4 your judgment some environmental modifications made
5 to the route?

6 A Yes.

7 Q And I take it that on
8 or after that date there were also some location
9 modifications dictated by your bore hole analysis as
10 it proceeded and the physical obstacles that you
11 confronted in the route?

12 A Yes, I am sure that there
13 were refinements after that date.

14 Q Yes, and I take it that
15 it is clear that there were location modifications
16 that were suggested by design changes and the Fort
17 Simpson route change is perhaps the best example.

18 A Yes.

19 Q Yes, and in the fourth
20 category there were location modifications that are
21 suggested, if I could put it this way, by pure econom-
22 ics and the cross-delta proposal is perhaps the
23 best example of that?

24 MR. MARSHALL: Well that may
25 be an argument you wish to advance, Mr. Scott. We
26 will call some evidence on that.

27 MR. SCOTT: Well, let me put it
28 this way, is there anything else that dictates the
29 cross-delta change except economics?

30 A Yes. I believe it is a

1 more secure system in the sense that it has less miles
2 of pipe. Now, that perhaps you could relate to econom-
3 ics also.

4 Q I would not have any
5 doubt about that, would you, Mr. Dau, that the security
6 of supply is from the point of view of the people
7 who are going to own it and use it, an economic ques-
8 tion.

9 A Well, I agree with you,
10 I just wanted to make sure that you understood that
11 it was not just capital dollars --

12 Q Oh no, but in the context
13 of that answer, that security of supply may be an
14 economic question, would you agree with me that that
15 proposal is dictated exclusively by economic consider-
16 ations -- I am not downgrading it, I am simply saying -

17 A I understand -- I agree.

18 Q Yes.

19 Well, now I notice and I do
20 not quite understand this that there have been some
21 route locations down near where the highway is either
22 going or supposed to go. There have been some route
23 location changes of a relatively minor type compared
24 to the cross-delta and the Fort Simpson.

25 A I do not understand, sir,
26 in what time frame --

27 Q Well, since 1973 --
28 what I am trying to get at, Mr. Dau, is that in the
29 last few years you have made two -- including the
30 cross-delta route -- you have made two very substantial

1 changes, that is the cross-delta, assuming you
2 make it, and the Fort Simpson.

3 A Yes.

4 Q And both of them we agree
5 are dictated by either economics or design.

6 A Yes.

7 Q Yes, and indeed looked
8 at in one way they have changed the prime route by al-
9 most half.

10 A You are referring to
11 miles?

12 Q Yes.

13 A That could be, I do not --

14 Q Yes --

15 A It would be close to
16 that I would suspect --

17 Q Yes, and both of those
18 changes if they are carried forward, if they are
19 decided on, will, I take it, lead to an amendment of
20 your filing both with the Minister and the National
21 Energy Board -- indeed the Fort Simpson Route change
22 has produced an amendment to your filing.

23 A Yes, that is my under-
24 standing.

25 Q But I understand that as
26 a matter of practice, there are route changes that have
27 been made of a much more modest variety -- you go
28 around a hill or something of that type --?

29 A I am sure that that is
30 correct, sir --

1 Q Yes, yes --

2 A -- that is a continuing
3 process to attempt to improve the location of the
4 line.

5 Q Yes. I take it that as
6 a matter of practice, those route changes of that
7 minor variety which may only be several miles do not
8 lead to an amendment to your filing ?

9 A I am having trouble with
10 the "several miles". You are referring not to a lateral
11 movement but to a relocation of several miles of route?

12 Q What I am getting at,
13 Mr. Dau, is that I understand and I think there is no
14 doubt about this, that since your filing, of the
15 alignment sheets, you have made two major changes,
16 one of which at least has produced an amendment or
17 proposed amendment?

18 A Yes.

19 Q You have also made a
20 number of other changes for which -- and I am not
21 criticizing it -- for which you have not filed amend-
22 ments?

23 A Yes.

24 Q Yes.

25 And I take it that there will
26 be more minor changes of that type for which it is not
27 required in your judgment to file amendments.

28 A Yes.

29 Q How do you distinguish
30 between a route change for which you file an amendment

1 and a route change for which you do not?

2 I am curious, I mean, there is no point in this, I
3 just want to find out why.

4 A In my view, sir, I
5 would attempt to define it as a minor or major route
6 change and in my judgment a minor route change is
7 a change that is probably on the order of hundreds
8 of feet in lateral movement, except for a case that I
9 tried to explain previously, of a relocation of
10 a highway that caused us to have to relocate the
11 pipeline for some considerable distance because the
12 highway relocation had removed all of the area available
13 to us on one side of the highway. The example that I
14 used I believe was the highway near the Mackenzie
15 River. We were between the two, the highway moved,
16 there was not enough room for us, we therefore had
17 to cross the highway and that could be -- it still may
18 be a minor change, but it could involve several miles
19 of pipeline route.

20 Q It does not -- or it
21 did not produce an amendment to your filing ?

22 A I would think it would
23 not, sir.

24 Q Would this be a reasonably
25 practical working definition, that you do not
26 amend your filing if, generally speaking, the route
27 change can be shown on the alignment sheets that you
28 have filed, that is, if it is within the ambit of the
29 alignment sheets?

30 A That seems reasonable

1 to me, sir.

2 Q Yes, but that on the other
3 hand when a route change goes off the alignment sheets,
4 then you have got to file them?

5 A I would think that you
6 would have to file that information, yes, sir.

7 Q Well, now, you have
8 been good enough to tell us about the Fort Simpson
9 route change and I understand that that was working
10 its way up to the surface for about a year?

11 A Yes, sir.

12 Q Yes, you told us on the
13 other hand that the Mackenzie Delta cross route :
14 I think has been working its way a little more
15 slowly, perhaps for about a year and a half.

16 A Yes, sir.

17 Q Yes. Have you any more
18 at home like that?

19 A No, sir.

20 Q There are no more major
21 route changes in the works?

22 A Not to my knowledge,
23 sir.

24 Q All right.

25 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

26 A Mr. Scott, can I just
27 clear up -- I think there is a mis understanding here
28 that -- after the April 1973 meeting, when several
29 relocations were made for environmental purposes, we
30 took the opportunity at that time to make some other

1 changes that we wanted to make for geotechnical pur-
2 poses and this then ended up in the route that was
3 filed. -- And we have not put forward any changes
4 in that route officially since that time except for the
5 two major ones that you are speaking of.

6 Now, we have, in testimony,
7 talked about the possible change at the Great Bear
8 River and the work that is going on there, but in
9 house we have not made any changes since the filing.

10 Q No, but you do not
11 disagree, I take it, Mr. Williams, with Mr. Dau's
12 general rule about the kind of change that produces
13 the filing change and the kind of route change that
14 does not?

15 A I think I would agree with
16 what he said.

17 Q Yes, well now, I take
18 it that any route change, no matter how minor, requires
19 a certain work up period. Is that not so?

20 WITNESS DAU:

21 A Yes.

22 Q And that is required,
23 so you can see whether in engineering and economic
24 terms it is feasible?

25 A Yes.

26 Q Well, now, what I am
27 concerned about is, are there changes that would not
28 produce filing changes, presently in the works that will
29 lead to deviations on the alignment sheet?

30 A Only with respect to our

1 continuing investigations at river crossings. I
2 think that would be the only case that I would be a-
3 ware of.

4 Q Yes --

5 A If in fact we do some
6 drilling, for instance, at Ebbutt Hills in the next
7 few months, we might have a minor relocation there.

8 Q yes --

9 A That type of a thing --

10 Q I am going to ask your
11 counsel and I am sure that he will agree to not hold
12 us in suspense until the route -- the minor route
13 location is final, but to let us know as these matters
14 come -- begin to surface in your company. Is there any
15 objection to that, Mr. Marshall?

16 MR. MARSHALL: No, I do not
17 think that there is any objection to that. We will
18 ask Northern Engineering to keep us advised as route
19 changes -- minor route changes are developed --

20 MR. SCOTT: With the object
21 that when one is being worked up, even though it may
22 never be adopted, or even proposed, you will let
23 at least Commission Counsel know for public purposes,
24 that that proposal is in the works so that we will
25 not all be taken by surprise.

26 MR. MARSHALL: I am not
27 prepared to go that far, Mr. Scott.

28 MR. SCOTT: Why not?

29 MR. MARSHALL: You are sugges-
30 ting that every time anyone in the organization thinks

Dau, Williams
Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by SCott

1 of a possible change, works it out on a napkin at his
2 lunch hour, that you want to be advised of that?

3 MR. SCOTT: No, no -- obviously
4 a lot of that goes on. I would be content, Mr.
5 Commissioner, if my friend were able to let me know
6 when Northern Engineering, as an entity, begins to take
7 seriously and begins to evaluate a scribbling that has
8 originally appeared on a napkin. -- So that the
9 evaluation process that the participants must be
10 engaged in will be able to begin at about the --
11 roughly the same time as the evaluation process that
12 the engineers are engaged in. That is not difficult,
13 is it, Mr. Marshall?

14 MR. MARSHALL: It is a ques-
15 tion of a judgment call, Mr. Scott. We will do our
16 best.

17 MR. SCOTT: Thank you very
18 much--

19 MR. MARSHALL: I agree with
20 the principle that is something is seriously under
21 consideration as a routing change, ^{the} that advice out
22 to be given to the INquiry and indeed that is what
23 we have attempted to do with more major route re-
24 locations and with respect to minor ones, we can do
25 that and will let you know from time to time should
26 any of these develop.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Mr. Scott,
3 can I clear up one further point with respect to
4 Mr. Watson's testimony? I really wasn't satisfied with
5 the way it was left. I don't know if he was given an
6 opportunity to proceed farther.

7 Q I moved right along, Mr.
8 Williams. Go ahead, please.

9 A He ended up with your
10 analysis that picking off the key points such as river
11 crossings and lakes and what-not, the procedure used
12 by people selecting the line between those points
13 is to have a stereoscope and the stereo pairs in
14 front of him, along with the terrain typing of Dr.
15 Mollard, and when he selects the route between these
16 three points, he certainly does take into account the
17 information supplied by Dr. Mollard.

18 Q I didn't -- so that
19 there is no doubt, Mr. Commissioner, I didn't intend
20 to suggest that Mr. Watson or any people on the staff
21 would not have that before them, and indeed any drill
22 holes that were available at that time.

23 A I just didn't think it
24 had come out that way.

25 Q Mr. Dau, on page No. 7
26 of your evidence, and I refer to it there just because
27 it's convenient, you list the factors that led to
28 adjustments from the base economic line and I'll just
29 read it to you because I think it's shorter:

30 "In the Assessment Group's report at page 161

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 they list a number of other factors,"
2 and have you got it there?

3 A One moment, sir.

4 Page 161?

5 Q 161, chapter 7.

6 A Yes.

7 Q And they list there
8 seven factors, perhaps we don't have to read them, they
9 run from:

10 "Fishing, hunting, trapping and camping areas,"
11 down to

12 "critical habitat for mammals, birds and fish."
13 I'd ask you to read those to yourself and I ask you
14 whether you agree that those are all factors which
15 should be considered in the process of route selection
16 and given due weight, whatever that may be?

17 A I agree, yes.

18 Q Did you have advisors
19 who were able to give you advice with respect to each
20 of the matters that is listed at page 161 of the
21 Assessment Group's Report?

22 A Yes, we did, and unfortun-
23 ately the advisors aren't neatly broken down into
24 those particular sections, obviously some of our
25 environmental advisors would cover several areas.

26 Q. I simply wished to
27 ascertain that.

28 A Yes.

29 Q And certainly having
30 heard that, that their evidence will be called.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A I think I previously
2 mentioned, they were retained by our clients rather
3 than by Northern itself.

4 Q Well now let me come to
5 this environmental factor, and I want to deal with it.
6 if we can, as a matter of principle and zero in on
7 one or two examples so we can see how it works.

8 Now in your evidence you have
9 said -- I can't put my finger on it right now -- that
10 the m ajor environmental change was the determination
11 by your company to recommend to Arctic Gas that you
12 should go around the Travaillant Lake mammal and fish
13 area.

14 A That was the major
15 change resulting from environmental concerns.

16 Q Yes, and I think you've
17 also said that that -- that your consultants were
18 virtually unanimous in recommending that change to
19 you.

20 A That's my recollection.

21 Q Yes. Well, I just want
22 to see how it works. When you had this unanimous
23 recommendation, what other factors did you take into
24 consideration in determining whether you should act
25 on it?

26 A My recollection, sir, is
27 that that was discussed in considerable detail in the
28 April meeting. I recall that there were -- there
29 was a further meeting in the evening where all view-
30 points were expressed, the route lengths were scaled,

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 the consideration for construction difficulties, the
2 length of line, and that type of thing, all of those
3 had an input into the route that is now selected.
4 It was not done in an isolated view from an environ-
5 mental view only.

6 Q Well, let me put it to
7 you this way. In that case and perhaps it's the
8 unique example, you had a substantial environmental
9 interest in changing the route.

10 A Yes.

11 Q They were all lined
12 up against the economists, if I can put it that way.
13 Wouldn't that be fair?

14 A That's probably fair.

15 Q All right, and it would
16 be apparent from the fact that that proposal was going
17 to add to the cost of the line because you had to go
18 out of your way.

19 A No question about that,
20 sir.

21 Q All right, well how did
22 you decide that question? Here you have the environ-
23 mentalists unanimous and you know that if you give
24 in it's going to cost you money. How did you decide
25 that?

26 A That was the decision --
27 or let me back up -- the meeting I'm referring to,
28 which was a meeting in the evening, weighed all the
29 factors and the client, Canadian Arctic Gas, was
30 present at that meeting, and the next day as I remember,

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 there was a proposal on a new route, which is the one
2 you now see, that had again my understanding, unanimous
3 approval of the environmentalists concerned, Northern
4 Engineering, and CAGL staff members, at which time
5 that recommendation by all was accepted by CAGL.

6 Q Well, did your firm
7 make any recommendation to CAGL as a result of what
8 the environmentalists told you?

9 A Yes, we were a party to
10 that decision where this selected route that you now
11 have was recommended., I believe the next morning, to
12 CAGL.

13 Q But I take it that you --
14 or let me put it this way -- did you have any role
15 in determining whether the costs that would be
16 involved outweighed the environmental concerns?

17 A No.

18 Q So would it be correct
19 to say that your recommendation then was simply based
20 on the environmentalists' concern?

21 A Yes, I think that's fair.

22 Q In other words, it was
23 your responsibility, if you judged it appropriate, to
24 make a recommendation to Arctic Gas, taking into
25 account the environmantalists' concern.

26 A That's correct, yes.

27 Q And I take it it's
28 obvious that Arctic Gas acted on that.

29 A That's correct.

30 Q I take it it's also

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 obvious, is it not, that there was (as far as you know)
2 no environmental recommendation that you made that
3 was turned down by Arctic Gas?

4 A No sir.

5 Q So wouldn't it be correct
6 to say in most practical terms that you were the judge
7 of whether, as best you could, as to whether the
8 environmentalists should have their way or not? And
9 that your judgment would lead to a recommendation to
10 Arctic Gas.

11 A I can't recall an
12 instance where -- perhaps I could explain, which I
13 believe I referred to the Arctic coastal plain.

14 Q We're coming to that,
15 because that's another interesting example. I just wonder
16 if we can deal with this. The point I'm trying to make
17 to you is, you have a proposed change, the environmen-
18 talists on one side, and dollars are on the other.

19 A Yes.

20 Q That's obvious in this case.

21 A Yes.

22 Q Now when you made a
23 recommendation to Arctic Gas, did you consider the
24 dollar question, or did you say, "Well, that's Arctic
25 Gas' business alone"?

26 A No, we had to consider
27 the dollar question, obviously, because the first ques-
28 tion we would have been asked is, "What is the difference
29 in cost?"

30 Q All right. Well, would

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 it be correct to say, then, that you heard out the
2 environmentalists and you made a judgment weighing the
3 environmental interest against the dollar interest,
4 and made a recommendation to Arctic Gas?

5 A Yes, I would have to
6 answer that yes.

7 Q Well, that seems to me
8 a very difficult thing to do. Did you have any direction
9 from Arctic Gas, or did you prepare for yourself any
10 scale of priorities which would enable you to make
11 this judgment?

12 A We did not prepare a
13 scale of priorities.

14 Q It's rather like comparing
15 apples and oranges, isn't it?

16 A It sure is.

17 Q Well now, can you give
18 us any help at all as to how you made that decision?
19 I wouldn't know how to begin. How did you begin?

20 A Can I go back to the
21 suggestion I was going to come up with, which is the
22 along the Arctic coastal plain, where there are concerns
23 about being close to the mountain or being close to the
24 coast? Obviously that type of a discussion went on
25 at length with the various consultants and I guess the
26 only help I can give you is that the compromise solu-
27 tion by choosing what is essentially the middle ground
28 is the only way I can respond to you. Now, in that
29 particular instance I'm sure that the costs involved
30 were not, you know, real large numbers; as I recall,

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 the differences in route lengths between the two
2 extremes compared to the middle, you know, there's
3 not 100% difference in route length, something like
4 that.

5 Q Well, let's pass onto
6 the north shore, because I think that's an interesting
7 example. I'm going to ask your counsel not today but
8 in due course to let me have a drawing of the proposed
9 route along the north shore prior to the April 1973
10 meeting, and I take it the contest there was between
11 the caribou people and the bird people.

12 A Yes sir.

13 Q And the competing inter-
14 ests were many and varied, were they not?
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 A In what sense?

2 Q Well, caribou is important
3 because it feeds people.

4 A Yes.

5 Q Yes. Endangered species
6 of small fowl are important because they may be among
7 the only colonies of those birds that exist in the
8 world.

9 A Yes.

10 Q Yes. How did you measure
11 those two competing interests off against each other?

12 A I was going to respond
13 by saying "with difficulty", but it is a --

14 Q I suggest to you, Mr.
15 Dau, that it was impossible.

16 A Yes, it is a compromise.
17 There is no way that I could put a value on a peregrine
18 falcon -- I obviously cannot.

19 Q Yes, it is impossible,
20 is it not?

21 A That is correct, yes.

22 Q You were asked to make
23 an impossible judgment. -- And you were not even an
24 expert in the field. I am not criticizing you, I
25 am simply outlining the problem, is that not so?

26 A That is correct.

27 Q Yes, and you were given
28 and had no scale of values of priorities that could be
29 attached to any of these considerations.

30 A I have no such scale of

1 values, no, sir.

2 Q You ~~were~~ about as useful
3 in that situation as a lawyer would be, is that not
4 so?

5 A Do I have to respond to
6 that?

7 (LAUGHTER)

8 MR. MARSHALL: I was going to
9 suggest that Commissioner Counsel stop insulting the
10 witness.

11 (LAUGHTER)

12 MR. SCOTT: Leaving personal-
13 ities aside, Mr. Dau, that would be fair, would it
14 not?

15 A That would probably be
16 fair, sir.

17 Q Yes, and your client
18 Arctic Gas was unable or did not give you any scale
19 such as that to assist you?

20 A I received no such ins-
21 tructions.

22 Q Did you give any
23 consideration to using the values that are used by
24 various American institutions and boards to scale
25 priorities?

26 A Not to my knowledge,
27 sir.

28 Q -- As among environmental
29 concerns?

30 A Not to my knowledge, sir,

1 Q No. Did you establish
2 a board of independent assessors made up of wildlife
3 people to determine these disputes between the caribou
4 people and the bird people?

5 A No, sir.

6 Q And I take it in this
7 almost impossible example on the northshore, in the
8 end, both the caribou people and the bird people
9 were furious at the result?

10 A I think that might be
11 too strong, sir -- I --

12 Q Were very upset --

13 A Yes, that is probably
14 true.

15 Q Yes, and is this not the
16 kind of thing that happened to you with fair regularity,
17 the environmentalists each with their own particular
18 areas of concern, were unable to resolve their differen-
19 ces because they had different areas of concern and
20 you were forced to mediate or make compromises or
21 just strike a decision to have done with it?

22 A That is correct.

23 Q Yes. And I put it --
24 it is obvious -- that in many instances that satis-
25 fied nobody.

26 A I am not sure of that,
27 sir, because there are further things that can be
28 done. First, with respect to the construction and
29 operation of a section of pipe rather than compressor
30 stations --

1 Q I am sorry, I should
2 have referred to that in fairness to you. You say that
3 route selection is only one of the things -- that
4 there are design and operation features that may
5 ameliorate the impact on birds and caribou and so
6 on --

7 A And construction
8 scheduling --

9 Q Yes --

10 A -- and so on. There are
11 other factors that must be considered.

12 Q But I take it that in
13 this environmental meeting, you were either babes in
14 the woods or Alice in Wonderland, in terms of having
15 any guideline with which to make a decision?

16 A We received no guidelines
17 from the client or anyone, sir.

18 Q And you were unable
19 to devise any?

20 A That is correct.

21 Q Well, now, in the course
22 of these hearings, we no doubt will be hearing from
23 many environmentalist and socio-economic people who
24 will express their views about the impact of your
25 pipeline and you expect that, do you not?

26 A Yes, I do.

27 Q Yes, and I take it that
28 it is conceivable that you will hear much evidence
29 that raises perhaps for the first time, environmental
30 or socio-economic considerations, that notwithstanding

1 your efforts, have not come to your attention?

2 A That is certainly possible,
3 sir.

4 Q And I take it that it is
5 the posture of Northern Engineering -- we will deal
6 with Arctic Gas later, but we can only deal with
7 Northern Engineering now -- it is the posture of
8 Northern Engineering that it will listen carefully
9 to these concerns?

10 A We will.

11 Q And that it will attempt to
12 respond by way of devising solutions for them where
13 possible?

14 A Yes, we have done that.

15 Q Yes, and you will con-
16 tinue to do that.

17 A And will continue to do
18 that, yes.

19 Q And I take it that you
20 will -- we don't want you to turn your whole work
21 force upside down, but that you will attempt to
22 devise solutions where possible for these problems
23 that are consistent with good engineering and good
24 economic practice?

25 A Yes, as long as you
26 include the construction scheduling and the
27 engineering function, yes.

28 Q And as those things
29 are done, if they are done, as I take your word for it,
30 you will respond with those suggestions, alternatives,

1 and proposals to the Commission?

2 A To the best I can, sir.

3 Q Yes, so that -- just
4 so that I will understand the situation -- as the
5 hearings proceed there will be -- you will be
6 listening and will be responding where possible?

7 A Yes --

8 MR. MARSHALL: Perhaps I
9 can be of some assistance here. Certainly they will
10 be provided with a copy of the transcript and I am
11 sure that you will be hearing through Mr. Genest from
12 time to time -- I am not sure what beyond that you are
13 asking for, Mr. Scott.

14 MR. SCOTT: Well, what
15 I am suggesting -- I would not have thought that
16 there was any doubt about it as a matter of public
17 posture, that the applicant will listen to what is
18 said and will attempt as we go along to devise, either
19 design or routing alternatives that will take account of
20 the problems raised, without interfering unduly with
21 economic or security considerations.

22 MR. MARSHALL: I think that
23 is so.

24 MR. SCOTT: Very good.

25 Well now, let me come to
26 one other matter that I do not think I understand and
27 that is about compressor stations, because I want to
28 get some idea of the flexibility that is here and
29 I understand that, to use the simplest example, which
30 is the one that always occurs to me, compressor

1 stations are like beads on a string -- spaced at
2 predetermined intervals -- would that be correct?

3 A Their spacing depends on
4 some detailed mathematical calculations and can be
5 very precise if you know the profile of the pipeline.

6 Q Yes, and so they --
7 when the hydraulic calculations have been made with
8 some very great precision you can determine not only
9 where the compressor stations may be sited, but where
10 they must be sited, for efficient operation?

11 A That is correct.

12 Q Yes. And I think you
13 told us the other day that if the strings tilted
14 uphill there is a slight variation?

15 A That is correct.

16 Q The compressor stations
17 generally speaking must move a little closer together?

18 A Yes.

19 Q And when the pipe is
20 tilted downhill there is a slight variation -- they
21 can be slightly further apart?

22 A Yes.

23 Q Now, I take it that the
24 cross-delta route and the Simpson route are not
25 -- if they are adopted -- are not going to alter the
26 location of the compressor stations that are shown in
27 the valley? I put that --

28 A The compressor stations
29 obviously -- on the cross-delta route -- cross-delta
30 change involves a change in the pipeline location

1 down to the Thunder River area and in that instance of
2 course the stations move laterally From Thunder River
3 to near Willow Lake -- Willow Lake River, the stations
4 do not change. Because of the Fort Simpson change, the
5 stations have moved laterally and of course are shown
6 in the revision to the application, but the effect of
7 installing the cross-delta will not change those locations
8 south of Thunder River.

9 Q Well, let me ask you this,
10 on the alignment sheets you showed us the other day the
11 designation for compressor stations.

12 A Yes.

13 Q Are those compressor
14 stations, bearing in mind the scale of the alignment
15 sheet, precisely sited?

16 A Bearing in mind
17 the scale, yes -- No I am sorry, let me
18 back up -- I believe there had been some locations that
19 had been moved within the half mile we discussed
20 earlier. IN other words, if the examination of a
21 photograph with a stereoscope indicated that we were
22 right in the middle of a lake, we moved them, obviously.

23 Q So would it be correct
24 to say that they are generally sited --

25 A Generally sited, sir. --

26 Q -- within a mile or two
27 but not precisely sited?

28 A I am sure the locations
29 are not the precise mathematical location, that is
30 what I am trying to say. There has been some judgment

1 used in examining the terrain to see whether a station
2 could be built at that location.

3 Q Well, now, the
4 question that I was asking, we have the alignment
5 sheets for the central Mackenzie Valley.

6 A Yes --

7 Q What I am asking is are
8 the amendments proposed at the delta, the cross-delta
9 route and the Fort Simpson route change, going to
10 alter, if adopted, the placement of the compressor
11 stations for the rest of the Valley as shown on the
12 alignment sheets.

13 A No.

14 Q Well, now, one other
15 factor about flexibility. You told us the other day that
16 -- dealing with questions of movement of compressor
17 stations -- that you could move one half a mile up -
18 hill and did you say two miles downhill without
19 endangering the hydraulic efficiency of the
20 operation?

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 I can't put my finger on your evidence but I think you
2 dealt with it.

3 A One moment, please.

4 Q I think you said upstream
5 and downstream rather than uphill and downhill.

6 A Sir, I was quoting from
7 a response to question 16, in the responses to the
8 Assessment Group.

9 Q Did I have the figures
10 right?

11 A That's just what I'm
12 checking.

13 Q Oh, I'm sorry.

14 A Well, sir, we give an
15 example of the effect of moving a station either half
16 a mile upstream or half a mile downstream, and I think
17 the problem that comes about, I was trying to illus-
18 trate that under certain circumstances, the movements
19 could be more than that, and perhaps didn't explain it
20 too well. The -- you have to visualize that the
21 pressure level in the pipeline varies from 1,680 pounds
22 discharge at the station to something on the order of
23 perhaps a number of 1,400 pounds at the next station.
24 Again I'm not being precisely correct, but for illus-
25 tration you could then determine the pressure in the
26 pipeline, above any point along the pipeline, between
27 those two stations. It obviously decreases as it goes
28 to the next station, and that has a certain slope, that
29 pressure gradient has a certain slope. Now if in fact
30 the location of the downstream station is on terrain

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that has essentially the same slope, you have more
2 flexibility in moving, you could move it further. If
3 the terrain at that station was at the same slope as
4 the pressure gradient, and I think off the top of
5 my head I suggested that in that particular instance
6 you might be able to consider two miles, I'm not
7 aware of such a location, I was using it as an example.

8 I also said that when the
9 converse was true, that you had a lot more trouble,
10 the half-mile was not appropriate.

11 Q Yes. Well now, I take it
12 that there's another restriction we should have out,
13 and that is that if you already moved the compressor
14 station upstream, then you have no flexibility with
15 respect to the one immediately --

16 A That's correct.

17 Q --ahead of it.

18 And in that sense it's
19 like beads on a string, each of which must be relative-
20 ly speaking, a particular distance from each other.

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q Now you said in your
23 evidence that there was no restriction on lateral
24 transfer. Let me just ask about that because I was a
25 little surprised by that answer, and perhaps you
26 didn't intend it in that context. I take it in the first
27 place the compressor station must be reasonably
28 adjacent to the pipe.

29 A I thought I had cleared
30 that up. I recognize the error.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Isn't that so?

2 A Yes.

3 Q You can't have it a couple
4 of miles from the pipe, or can you?

5 A The illustration, or an
6 illustration to demonstrate what I meant is the Fort
7 Simpson change, for instance it involves several hundred
8 miles of pipeline. We have the same number of stations,
9 we didn't significantly change the length of the line
10 but we moved them all laterally. You obviously have
11 to move the pipeline every time you move the station
12 laterally.

13 Q So in lateral movement
14 the key is that the compressor station must be on the
15 pipeline.

16 A Yes sir.

17 Q And the second restriction
18 I take it, is that if your lateral movement increases
19 the length of the line substantially, you will have to
20 put in or you may have to put in an additional compres-
21 sor station.

22 A That situation could
23 arise, or you would be required to change the location
24 of several of the adjacent stations.

25 Q Yes. Well now, you told
26 us that the delta and the Simpson route change were
27 developed over the last year, in one case, year and a
28 half in the other. May I ask when, with respect to
29 both of them, when your socio-economic consultants
30 went to work on those route changes?

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A We do not have any socio-
2 economic consultants, sir. The information has been
3 provided to CAGSL staff, and I would assume that they
4 have been aware of it.

5 Q Well, let me put this
6 to you. I understand that you don't retain the
7 socio-economic consultants. When did you let your
8 environmental consultants know about these proposed
9 route changes?

10 A Perhaps Mr. Williams
11 can respond to it in time frame better than I.

12 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Well, with
13 respect to the cross-delta routing, when the study
14 began seriously in the fall of 1973, the environmen-
15 talists were made aware of it, very close to the same
16 time, and they started on a literature search of
17 possible difficulties in that area.

18 With respect to the Fort
19 Simpson re-alignment, which we said started -- my
20 mind's gone blank about dates, but they were advised
21 at about the same time that we started studying it
22 seriously from an engineering aspect.

23 Q And did you take any
24 steps to alert Arctic Gas to alert its socio-economic
25 consultants that these changes were in the works?

26 WITNESS DAU: Not specifically,
27 I don't think, sir.

28 Q You would agree with me
29 that that would be important, wouldn't it, that they
30 should get their socio-economic input in on those two

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 route changes as early as possible?

2 A I agree with you, sir, but
3 you must recognize that we work very closely with the
4 staff of Canadian Arctic Gas, and it's not a case that
5 we go off and do things in isolation and report back
6 months later. There is constant dialogue between us.

7 Q But in respect of the
8 Fort Simpson route change, you or the applicant, as
9 you will note from his application, respecting it
10 says that the socio-economic impact of the original
11 Fort Simpson route and the alternative route are about
12 the same.

13 A I've read that, sir.

14 Q Yes. Do you know from
15 whom that socio-economic analysis came?

16 A I do not.

17 Q Don't you know who
18 Arctic Gas has retained to give them socio-economic
19 advice on the Fort Simpson route change?

20 A Yes sir. They retained
21 Gemini North in the past.

22 Q Do you know who they
23 retained on the Fort Simpson route change?

24 A Not specifically. I can-
25 not recall the name of the other consultant.

26 Q Well, perhaps Mr.
27 Marshall can let me know later who that was. You're
28 not a sociologist, or an economist, but you have
29 told us that it was important or that it was judged to
30 be important that an appropriate distance be kept from

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 established communities when you're setting up the
2 line.

3 A Yes.

4 Q And I take it that there
5 are two factors inherent in that. One is that if you
6 go within a certain distance of a community you have
7 to have a certain dimension -- I shouldn't say "dimine-
8 sion" but a certain depth or width of pipe.

9 A "Wall thickness" is the
10 word you're looking for.

11 Q Wall thickness.

12 A Yes.

13 Q So there would be an
14 economic virtue in staying, as we have used the phrase,
15 at an appropriate distance from the communities.

16 A Yes.

17 Q What is the appropriate
18 distance in terms of changing the wall thickness of the
19 pipe, do you know that?

20 A It's a matter of the codes
21 that are used for design of pipelines in Canada and
22 United States, and it involves a population density
23 count along the pipeline route. I could get you the
24 precise information, if you like.

25 Q It's apparent, isn't it,
26 that the appropriate distance in terms of wall thickness
27 is on a scale based on population density?

28 A Yes, that's correct.

29 Q And I take it that that
30 has been the only guide that you have had, or your

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 firm has had in determining the appropriate distance
2 from communities.

3 A I would think so, sir,
4 yes, with one -- recognizing, of course, in the back
5 of your mind the potential expansion of the community.

6 Q Yes.

7 A In other words, you could
8 precisely locate a pipeline today by a community, and
9 not have to worry about a re-design of the system, and
10 then be in trouble four or five years from now when
11 the community expanded. If you put that into the --

12 Q But that's also an econom-
13 ic consideration, isn't it? You don't want to have to
14 dig up that pipe and replace it with a thicker wall when
15 the community gets bigger.

16 A I would say that it's
17 economic in its main sense, yes. It could also
18 restrict the expansion of the community to a degree.

19 Q But I take it that as
20 you had no socio-economic consultants, your recommenda-
21 tions to Arctic Gas with respect to the placing of the
22 pipe in relation to communities was based on the
23 consideration which you've outlined.

24 A Yes.

25 Q Yes, and on that alone,
26 you having no socio-economic consultants?

27 A The precise location with
28 respect to the community is also dependent on -- I
29 think you understand -- is also dependent upon other
30 things such as if we outlined in route selection, in

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 other words, we don't -- that affects the route. We
2 didn't specifically change the pipeline route because
3 of the location of the community. I'm not sure I under-
4 stand you yet.

5 Q A sociologist might be
6 able to fix in sociological terms the distance a pipe-
7 line and its social impact should be from a community,
8 you understand that theory?

9 A Yes, I understand.

10 Q You didn't have any of
11 that input.

12 A No sir.

13 Q And therefore I put it
14 to you that your recommendations to Arctic Gas on the
15 appropriate distance from communities was dictated by
16 the problems of pipeline construction and economics
17 exclusively.

18 A I think the answer to
19 that is "yes," but I must tell you that in no instances
20 was the pipeline logically located so close to the
21 communities that we would have to consider the re-
22 design of the wall thickness. The logical location
23 that we have, you know, that we were not conscious of
24 that particular thing because it didn't occur.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Your main consideration
2 in this area was economic and engineering.

3 A Yes sir.

4 Q Entirely.

5 A Yes sir.

6 Q And it will be a happy
7 accident that the sociologists will agree with your
8 placement of the pipe in relation to communities.

9 A I imagine that's true,
10 sir, yes.

11 Q Well now, I take it
12 that the compressor stations are at least, in human
13 terms the most offensive part of the pipeline. How
14 can I ask that question of a pipeline man? But I
15 take it that they're noisy and they're busy.

16 A No, I would disagree,
17 sir. Busy, but I don't understand your term "busy".

18 Q Let me put it this way.
19 Have you formed any judgment as to whether -- I ask you
20 this as a human being first of all, whether a length
21 of pipe six feet in the ground is less offensive than
22 a compressor station with the travelling to it and the
23 noise and so on that may come from it?

24 A In that sense I under-
25 stand your question, yes.

26 Q And you will agree with
27 me that in that sense the compressor station is busier
28 and noisier.

29 A Yes, it's certainly
30 noisier than buried pipe, and certainly people visit it

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 far more than they visit buried pipe.

2 Q You're making fun of
3 me.

4 A No, I'm not. No, I'm not.

5 Q Now, that's particularly
6 so in this case, is it not, because the compressor
7 station site, with certain exceptions, is going to be
8 used as the construction site.

9 A That's correct.

10 Q Yes, and the borrow
11 locations, insofar as possible, are going to be located
12 as close as possible to the construction site.

13 A Yes.

14 Q So that at least during
15 the period of construction, the compressor station is
16 going to be, and its environs, is going to be a very
17 busy place indeed.

18 A Yes.

19 Q Well now, the Fort
20 Simpson, the original Fort Simpson route, the route
21 and the nearest compressor station, I am advised, was
22 about 20 miles from the community. Would that be
23 approximately right?

24 A I'll accept that, sir.
25 The pipeline is about that far away, yes.

26 Q Well, I'm telling you
27 because I've seen it on the map.

28 A Yes sir.

29 Q But under the route
30 change, the compressor station and the construction

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 site are immediately adjacent to Fort Simpson, across
2 the river.

3 A May I get the map out,
4 please? It's about eight miles away, sir, I believe.

5 Q On the first drawing?
6 On the original?

7 A No, I'm talking about the
8 revision east of Fort Simpson, the station is north
9 of the Town of Fort Simpson, and by road, my rough
10 scale would indicate that its about eight miles.

11 Q Wouldn't it be correct
12 to say that its across the river?

13 A Yes, it's across the
14 river, sir.

15 Q It's almost Fort
16 Simpson north --

17 A No, no, I'm sorry. The
18 compressor station itself is more than four miles
19 from the river, on the north side of the river., and
20 looking at the map I would say that it's almost
21 directly north of Fort Simpson.

22 Q All right.

23 A The access road to the
24 site would be a distance of five miles or more to
25 a dock on the north side of the river.

26 Q Well, let me put this
27 to you. The heli-pad and the road and the construction
28 camp and the compressor station and the wharves and the
29 whole exercise are going to be within four to eight
30 miles of Fort Simpson under the new plan.

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A That's correct, sir.

2 Q Well, and you agree with
3 me that these socio-economic consultants to Arctic
4 Gas have said that that change doesn't alter the socio-
5 economic balance between the two alternatives?

6 A That's what the appli-
7 cation says, yes sir.

8 Q Now you're not a socio-
9 logist and neither am I, but can you as a layman under-
10 stand that? That's pretty tough to understand, isn't
11 it?

12 A Can I look at the original
13 mileage sheets? On the route east -- sorry, on the
14 route west of Fort Simpson the compressor station is
15 about 20 miles from Fort Simpson. It was connected
16 to or had access to Fort Simpson via the Mackenzie
17 Highway and a permanent road was constructed for a
18 distance of some ten miles to the station. The
19 station, that is on the east of Fort Simpson route,
20 is -- I'm guessing -- about eight miles from Fort
21 Simpson, and has no direct access by vehicle.

22 Q Well, there's going to
23 be a boat crossing by Arctic Gas, isn't there?

24 A Yes sir.

25 Q Of course.

26 A And the argument we have,
27 sir, then is the difference between eight miles and
28 20 miles.

29 Q Well, I put it to you
30 Mr. Dau, as the last matter I want to deal with, that

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 it's very difficult for anybody to understand how there
2 can be no socio-economic difference when the whole
3 shibang is moved right to the edge of the town.

4 A I can't agree with you
5 that it's right at the edge of town, sir.

6 Q All right. You're going
7 to -- are you going to be in charge of construction?
8 Your company.

9 A In charge of construction?

10 Q Yes.

11 A No sir, we perform an
12 engineering function -- design, surveys, route loca-
13 tions and things like that, not in charge of construc-
14 tion, sir.

15 Q You're going to have trouble
16 preventing those gangs from going into Fort Simpson
17 for a beer.

18 A Yes.

19 SCOTT: All right, we'll wait
20 for your socio-economic panel to explain that. That
21 is all the questions I have. Thank you, Mr. Dau.

22 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott,
23 are there others who wish to cross-examine this
24 panel?

25 MR. SCOTT: I should say, Mr.
26 Commissioner, that Mr. Templeton has sent us some
27 questions, a few questions. I think I would prefer
28 not to ask them, and Mr. Dau and Mr. Williams at least
29 will be returning shortly, perhaps I should notify
30 Mr. Templeton that if he wishes to ask them they will

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 be available on the construction panel. I am prepared,
2 as I have said, to ask any questions or to assist any-
3 body in the room who is not one of the major parti-
4 cipants, to put questions, and I have not heard from
5 anybody in respect to this panel, but I'm generally
6 prepared to help in that way with any other person, but
7 I am not certain that that should apply to major
8 participants. The risk might be that they'd all go
9 home and hand their questions to me.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, since
11 Mr. Dau, I take it, will be returning on the construc-
12 tion panel, then I think that I will allow Mr. Temple-
13 ton at that time to ask his questions about routing
14 instead of requiring you, Mr. Scott, to put them to the
15 witness. I think it's better that Mr. Templeton put
16 his own questions.

17 MR. MARSHALL: That is fine
18 with us, sir. There was a point that Commission
19 counsel asked me to advise him about, and that
20 pertained to socio-economic advice to Arctic Gas
21 pertaining to the routing revision, east of Fort
22 Simpson. My instructions are that Arctic Gas
23 received advice from Van Dinkle Associates, Mr.
24 Ralph Hedlin, H-E-D-L-I-N, and members of the Arctic
25 Gas staff who had become informed on matters of
26 socio-economic concerns.

27 Mr. Commissioner, I have
28 no re-examination for this panel.

29 MR. BAYLY: Mr. Commissioner,
30

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
by Commissioner

1 I have one matter that I had raised earlier, and having
2 been assured by Mr. Marshall and his witness that I can
3 inspect the alignment sheets with the corrections or
4 up-datings that Mr. Watson has, and also having been
5 assured that there is even more recent information
6 available, I do not wish to further this point in
7 cross-examination at this stage.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: Q Mr. Dau,
9 the application for a right-of-way by Arctic Gas has
10 all along described the coastal route from Prudhoe
11 Bay along the north slope to the Canadian border, then
12 across the Yukon to Fort McPherson the prime route,
13 and the interior route through the mountains as the
14 alternate route. Now both of those routes were found
15 to be feasible strictly from an engineering point of
16 view, and they were advanced, one as the prime and the
17 other as the alternate route.

18 WITNESS DAU: That is correct,
19 sir.

20 Q The route along the coast
21 is preferred because it is 550 million dollars cheaper
22 to build it on the Alaska side of the border than it
23 is to build the interior route, is that right?

24 A From the -- those were
25 the numbers I gave you yesterday, yes, I believe that's
26 correct, sir, if I could dig them out.

27 Q Well, I don't think you
28 have to dig them out. You said that it was \$550
29 million costlier to build the interior route on the
30 Alaska side --

Dau, Williams, Mollard, Watson
Cross-Exam by Commissioner

1 A That's right.

2 Q -- or cheaper to go
3 along the coast on the Alaska side.

4 A Yes.

5 Q Now, is that the reason
6 why the coastal route was chosen over the alternate
7 route?

8 A That would be one of the
9 main considerations. There are other considerations with
10 respect to operation of the pipeline. The interior
11 route would be more difficult to operate but it's
12 feasible. In that sense it's more expensive and more
13 difficult to operate.

14 Q Well, first of all it
15 is from a financial point of view \$550 million cheaper
16 to construct on the Alaska side of the border.

17 A That's correct.

18 Q Secondly, you say that
19 from an engineering point of view there are advantages
20 to the coastal route.

21 A Yes.

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

1 Q Are there any other
2 reasons that you know of why the coastal route is
3 preferred as the prime route by Arctic Gas over the
4 interior route?

5 A There are some environ-
6 mental considerations, sir, which I believe will be
7 discussed in detail with the environmental panel.

8 Q Now, the -- you told
9 Mr. Scott that the route across the Mackenzie Delta,
10 across the mouth of the Mackenzie Delta has been under
11 consideration since the fall of 1973.

12 A That was active consider-
13 ation, sir. I have difficulty in determining when it --
14 to define between a preliminary and a very serious
15 look at something and --

16 Q But you used the words
17 "Active consideration".

18 A Yes, that is correct,
19 sir.

20 Q Was the -- has the
21 cross-delta route, that is the route across the mouth
22 of the Mackenzie Delta been under consideration since
23 -- under active consideration since the fall of 1973?

24 A Yes, sir.

25 Q Now, does that mean that
26 since the fall of 1973 you yourself would have
27 had it under active consideration?

28 A Yes, sir.

29 Q And the people to whom
30 you report at Arctic Gas would have been aware that it

1 was under active consideration by the fall of 1973?

2 A Yes, sir.

3 Q Can you tell me who you
4 would report to at Arctic Gas?

5 A In that time frame,
6 Mr. Harvey and more currently, Mr. Stark.

7 Q And what was Mr. Harvey's
8 position?

9 A Vice-president of
10 engineering and construction, I believe.

11 Q And what was Mr. Stark's
12 position?

13 A Mr. Stark is relatively
14 new. He is the General Manager of engineering and
15 construction.

16 Q Well, now the Fort
17 Simpson route. How long ago was it that the Fort
18 Simpson -- that the alternate route, the so-called Fort
19 Simpson amendment to avoid the crossing of the Liard.
20 How long ago was it that that route change was brought
21 under active consideration?

22 A It came under active
23 consideration at the time of the decision to install
24 the dual river crossings on the major rivers and that
25 time frame is -- we could get that date quickly for
26 you -- it -- if my memory is right, it was spring of
27 '74 or very early '74, but I would have to confirm
28 that particular date.

29 Q Well, let me put it another
30 way. When was the concept of dual pipes under the

1 major river crossings first brought under active
2 consideration?

3 A Just immediately prior
4 to that, sir.

5 Q Without tying yourself
6 down to a specific date or even month, what period was
7 that?

8 A It would be the spring
9 of '74, sir. It would be -- essentially the two times
10 coincided, once that decision was made it became
11 very apparent that the cost advantages swung to the
12 other route, within a month or so in that time
13 frame.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
15 thank you very much Mr. Dau, Mr. Williams, Dr. Mollard,
16 and Mr. Watson. We all appreciate that you have
17 come and have been so patient with all of the counsel
18 who have questioned you and have been so patient with
19 with me as well. I understand we may be seeing all
20 of you again and certainly one or two of you again
21 and should look forward to that.

22 We will adjourn until two o'clock
23 on Monday afternoon and the Inquiry will sit from
24 two until five on Monday afternoon and then from eight
25 until ten on Monday evening. From two to five Monday
26 afternoon and from eight until ten Monday evening and
27 then on Tuesday we will start at nine o'clock in the
28 morning again. So we stand adjourned.

29 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO MARCH 17, 1975.)
30

347
M835
Vol. XVIII

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

TITLE

Vol. XVIII

14 March 1975

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

~~FEB 25 1975~~

Used

347

M835

Vol. XVIII

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

Government
Publications

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

March 17, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XIX

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

MAR 20 1975

LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.	
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,	
Mr. Alick Ryder and	
Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Enquiry;
Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.	
Mr. Jack Marshall,	
Mr. Darryl Carter, and	
Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited;
Mr. Reginald Gibbs Q.C.	
Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines Ltd.;
Mr. Russell Anthony,	
Prof. Alastair Lucas &	
Dr. Andrew Thompson	for Canadian Arctic Resources Committee;
Mr. Glen W. Bell and	
Mr. Gerry Sutton	for Northwest Territories Indian Brotherhood and Metis Association of the Northwest Territories;
Mr. John U. Bayly	for Inuit Tapirisat of Canada and the Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement;
Mr. Ron Veale and	
Mr. Allan Luke	for Yukon Native Brother- hood;
Mr. Carson H. Templeton	for Environment Protection Board;
Mr. David Reesor	for Northwest Territories Association of Municipal- ities
Mr. Murray Sigler	Northwest Territories Chamber of Commerce

347
M835

Vol. X/X

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

MAR 20 1975

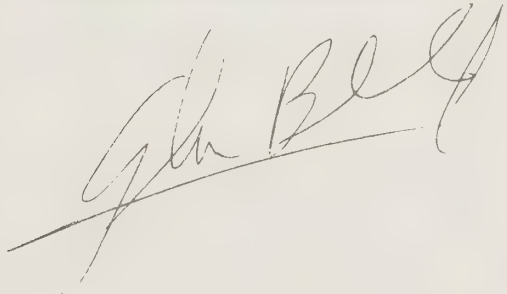
LIBRARY

<u>1</u>	<u>I N D E X</u>	<u>Page</u>
2	WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:	
3	John Ivor CLARK	
	Garry Wood HOLLINGSHEAD	
4	Edward Charles McROBERTS	
	William Alexander SLUSARCHUK	
5	Norbert Reuben MORGENSTERN	
	Richard H. COOPER	
6	R.H. HARDY	
	Guy Leslie WILLIAMS	
7	- In Chief	2131
8		
9	EXHIBITS:	
10		
	76 Resume of Biographical Data	2132
11		
	77 Appendix "C"	2132
12		
	78 Appendix "B"	2133
13		
14		
15		
16		
17		
18		
19		
20		
21		
22		
23		
24		
25		
26		
27		
28		
29		
30		

TRANSCRIPT CORRECTIONS (Mar. 7 - 13)

1. March 13, 1975, Vol. XVII

Page 1918.	Line 11.	Should read:	"Q. Two <u>borrow</u> pits"
" "	" 23.	" "	"Q. Two <u>borrow</u> pits"
" 1919.	" 9.	" "	"Q. Two more <u>borrow</u> pits"
Page 1939.	" 15.	" "	" <u>Conflict</u> is different. In some..."
" 1936.	" 22.	" "	"....results be <u>obtained</u> "
" 1940.	" 15.	" "	" <u>Louis</u> or Willy Yendi...."

A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to read "John B. Bell", is written over a horizontal line.

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

March 17, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: I wonder if I could make of the applicant, a request for information that we would like to have at a time convenient to him, just so that he will have a record of it, I thought I might read it into the proceedings?

We have three requests for information that apply to that portion of the pipeline within the Yukon and the Northwest Territories only, and the first is:

1. What is the total mileage of the applicant's original prime route including laterals affected by subsequently proposed alternatives and amendments?

I think here we're thinking principally of the cross-delta alternative which is proposed, and the Fort Simpson route change, which has already been filed.

2. Assuming the cross-delta alternative and the Fort Simpson amendment, and any other relevant proposed changes, what is the total mileage of the applicant's route including laterals?

Also for comparison we would be grateful for the total mileage of the original prime route.

3. Assuming the cross-delta alternative, the Fort Simpson amendment, and any other relevant proposed changes, what is the total mileage of the

1 route which will not be covered by bore holes
2 located within the limits of the mosaics on the
3 applicant's alignment sheets, and with the
4 frequency of at least one bore hole to every
5 three miles?

6 Now I think those questions
7 will be clear -- Mr. Genest is shaking his head --

8 MR. GENEST: Well, I presume
9 I will have access to him explaining to me.

10 MR. SCOTT: You will have
11 access to me to have them explained, and I think the
12 record when it's reviewed will reveal precisely the
13 information we would like, and I'd be grateful to him
14 if he could take under consideration providing that
15 to us.

16 MR. GENEST: Certainly.

17 Mr. Commissioner, before I
18 call my next panel, we undertook on Friday to inform
19 ourselves over the weekend as to the source of infor-
20 mation that was given to Mr. Williams in cross-examina-
21 tion by Mr. Bayly with reference to trappers in the
22 Old Crow area, and I have a letter from which I am
23 informed the information came. The source of the
24 information was the Government of the Yukon Territory,
25 and was contained in a letter dated July 31, 1973,
26 written to our Mr. D.M. Fox or to Mr. D.M. Fox of
27 the Northern Engineering Services Limited by Mr. J.B.
28 Fitzgerald, Director of Game of the Government of the
29 Yukon Territory, and perhaps I should read it. It says:

1 "Dear Mr.--"
2 and it's dated, I think I gave the date, July 31, 1973,
3 it says:

4 "Dear Mr. Fox:

5 In reply to your letter
6 of July 6th we have enclosed a photo copy of
7 a map of the Northern Yukon showing the Old
8 Crow group trapping area, the Fort McPherson
9 NorthWest Territories group trapping area,
10 the Fishing Branch Game River Preserve and
11 the Peel River Game Preserve. That portion
12 of the Yukon between the Old Crow group
13 area and the coast is reserved for the hunting
14 and trapping activities of natives from the
15 Aklavik and Tuk area, who have traditionally
16 hunted and trapped in this area. One family,
17 resident on Herschel Island, also utilizes
18 this area. There are approximately 50 trappers
19 in the Old Crow group area, but only five or
20 six in the Beaufort Coast zone. During the
21 past two years, only two serious trappers in
22 this zone worked the coast line."

23 It's signed by Mr. Fitzgerald, and that was the source,
24 sir, of Mr. Williams' information.

25 With that, sir, may I call
26 my numerous next panel? I hope it doesn't out-number
27 the audience. Be seated, gentlemen, please.

28 Before you do, Mr. Williams
29 is on this panel, sir, and I just notice was not
30 listed on the names of witnesses that were furnished

1 with the summary of evidence. Mr. Williams is on the
2 panel really for the purpose of dealing with our --
3 mainly for the purpose of dealing with our test facili-
4 ties, because he was the supervisor. He's already been
5 sworn.

1 Perhaps if I could name
2 them from my left, we start with Dr. Cooper. Next
3 to him is Dr. Garry Hollingshead, next to him
4 is Dr. William Alexander Slusarchuk, next to Dr.
5 Slusarchuk is Dr. R.M. Hardy, next to Dr. Hardy is
6 Dr. John I. Clark. Next to Dr. Clark is Dr. Morgen-
7 stern, Norbert Reuben Morgenstern. Next to Dr.
8 Morgenstern is Dr. Edward Charles McRoberts and
9 of course next to Dr. McRoberts is the only Mr.
10 on the panel, Mr. Williams.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Welcome
12 back Mr. Williams.

13 MR. GENEST: May they
14 be sworn, sir.

15 RICHARD H. COOPER, sworn.

16 GARRY WOOD HOLLINGSHEAD, sworn.

17 WILLIAM ALEXANDER SLUSARCHUK,

18 sworn.

19 ROBERT MCDONALD HARDY, sworn.

20 JOHN IVOR CLARK, sworn.

21 NORBERT REUBEN MORGENSTERN,

22 sworn.

23 EDWARD CHARLES MCROBERTS,

24 sworn.

25 GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS, resumed.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr.

27 Genest, before you begin questioning these witnesses,
28 I think I should tell you that I have received a
29 letter from New York, New York, from a gentleman who
30 obviously has this inquiry in proper perspective. He

Clark, Hollings head, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy -- In Chief

1 has written me a letter, Commissioner of the Mac-
2 kenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry. He says:

3 "Enclosed is a clipping from the New York Times"

4 He says:

5 "I am interested in the handstitched moccasins
6 of the Indians. Could you help me to get a
7 pair or two. I will pay for them when you let
8 me know the cost. I wear size 9 or 9 1/2
9 medium width. If you cannot oblige would you
10 please pass this note on to someone who can.

11 Thanking you in advance, ..."

12 Well, that gentleman is not getting overcome by the
13 --

14 MR. GENEST: I wonder
15 if as with the previous panels, sir, I might file
16 as an exhibit, the next exhibit number, the
17 set of resumes setting up the biographical data
18 on each of these witnesses. I have already handed a
19 copy of that to Miss Huthinson and the participants,
20 I believe, have that resume which was provided with
21 our summary of evidence. And while I am filing
22 paper I would also like to file, sir, what was
23 called appendix "c" to the summary of the evidence
24 of this panel which is a list of reports to which
25 they have referred or upon which they may rely.

26 (RESUMES OF BIOGRAPHICAL DATA MARKED AS EXHIBIT
27 NO. 76.)

28 (APPENDIX "C" MARKED AS EXHIBIT NO. 77)

29 MR. GENEST: There should
30 be added to this list three reports which I

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 described to the Commission last Wednesday and per-
2 haps I could name them again. The first was a report
3 on drainage and erosion control -- that is E.R.O.S.I.O.N.
4 -- I see that I was quoted in the transcript as
5 referring to rodent control and we do not have a
6 panel dealing with that.

7 The second was called a
8 draft interim report on results from frost effects
9 study, the third was a reference book of water
10 crossings, volume VII, "Supplemental Hydrology". I
11 now, sir, wish to advise my friends and you that we
12 have received again two fresh additional reports that
13 have just come into being, both prepared or
14 contributed to by members of this panel and upon
15 which we will be relying. One is called a report
16 on foundation design and its formal date is February
17 1975. The second is called, is entitled, "Reconnais-
18 sance of the Aleyska Pipeline", and I have two copies
19 here of this report available for inspection by
20 any of the parties and Commission staff. But those
21 should be added to the list of reports in Appendix
22 "C".

23 I have also handed to the
24 Secretary of the Commission what is referred to in
25 the summary of evidence as Appendix "B" which is
26 a -- what would I call that? -- a treatment of the
27 technical studies, a list of the technical studies
28 in the geotechnical area which were conducted by or
29 under the supervision or for the use of this panel
30 and if that could receive an exhibit number.

(APPENDIX "B" MARKED AS EXHIBIT NO. 78)

There was an error on page six of that material. When I handed it out to my friends there should be a new page six which I inserted in the copy given to Miss Hutchinson and I have distributed a copy of the new page six to the participants and to the Commission Counsel.

Perhaps now, sir, I could move on to the qualifications and experience of the panel and I would like to start with Dr. Clark ---

MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner, before my friend does could I just deal with the question of reports. We recognize that the scientific work is ongoing and ^{that} there will be reports produced from time to time on various matters. It is a very difficult matter, however, when three reports nicely bound thereby indicating their availability some time ago, let us say, ten days ago are produced two days before and then on the very day of the INquiry. It makes it very difficult to consume and understand anything in those reports and to conduct any kind of cross-examination. I would hope that my friend in the future, if the report is not bound in some permanent form will take steps to at least make one copy available in the unready state so that it can be examined by those people who have some interest in this subject matter.

MR. GENEST: I will do that, sir.

1 MR. SCOTT: It seems to me
2 that in this case, assuming that there is anything
3 relevant in those reports as I am sure that there
4 is and which the panel relies, it will be virtually
5 impossible to conduct any significant cross-examina-
6 tion with respect to it.
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 MR. GENEST: Well, I know the
3 problem. I hope my friend appreciates our problem. The
4 work is on-going, it is in peoples' heads and then gets
5 reduced to paper and then is issued as a report. If
6 there is prejudice caused by the lack of having that
7 report in hand in good time, I'm sure any of the parties
8 or all the parties who have suffered that prejudice
9 will apply to you, sir, for some time to digest them
10 and I'll have to bring the panel back if they make out a
11 case of prejudice; and I appreciate that and when these
12 come out I undertake to -- or when I hear that they're
13 coming out, I undertake to get at least some advance
14 notice or copies just as soon as I can.

15 Q Dr. Clark, you are, I
16 understand -- first of all you're sitting in the
17 middle, you should raise your right hand and identify
18 yourself -- you're the supervisor of geotechnical and
19 environment studies for Northern Engineering Services
20 Company Limited.

21 A That's right, sir.

22 Q And I understand that
23 you received a B. Sc. in Mathematics and Physics from
24 Acadia University.

25 A Yes sir.

26 Q You then received a
27 Bachelor of Engineering from Nova Scotia Technical
28 College, which is where everybody in Nova Scotia goes
29 to get that kind of degree?

30 A That's right.

Q You received a Master of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

Science in Civil Engineering from the same institution.

A Yes sir.

Q And you received a
Doctorate in Civil Engineering from that institution in
1970, your specialty being soil mechanics and foundation
engineering.

A The Master of Science
was from the University of Alberta.

Q Oh, I'm sorry, I over-
looked that, yes. And you belong to the usual
Associations of Engineers?

A Yes sir.

Q And you were a member
of the Organizing Committee for the Third International
-- it says here, "Society of Soil Mechanics & Founda-
tion Engineers", I understand that's an error.

A It's the Third Inter-
national Conference on Permafrost, which is upcoming.

Q And what kind of con-
ference is that, sir?

A It's held every three
to four years. It was held last year in Yakutsk, Russia.
Next time it will be held is in 1978 in Edmonton,
Alberta.

Q And I take it it dis-
cusses permafrost, that's self-evident?

A Yes, from several
points of view.

Q From an engineering,
as well as--

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

In Chief

A Engineering, geology and
glacialology and so on and so forth, included.

Q You're an associate
editor of the Canadian Geotechnical Journal?

A Yes sir.

Q What is that publication,
sir?

A That's a publication
that is officially put out by the National Research
Council. It serves more or less as the voice of the
geotechnical community in Canada.

Q How long have you been
in that capacity?

A About two years, I believe.

Q And you're the first
Albertan to be elected a director of the Canadian
Geotechnical Society, or have I got that wrong?

A That's correct. There
is a director from several regions in Canada, and I'm
the director for Alberta.

Q And from 1957 to 1960
you were with the Royal Canadian Air Force in charge
of construction projects in the Arctic and sub-Arctic.

A That's right, sir.

Q And what were some of
the projects you worked on?

A Well, I spent about seven
months at Whitehorse, principally involved with the
construction of buildings. The larger component of
that period with the Air Force I was at a mid-Canada

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 line site in Hudson's Bay where we constructed a wharf,
2 inland training basin, some pipeline, buildings and
3 where we did a number of engineering studies, many of
4 which were related to permafrost problems.

5 Q And thereafter, sir, you
6 were a project engineer with the Soil Mechanics Divi-
7 sion of the Department of Public Works in Ottawa?

8 A Yes sir.

9 Q And your responsibility
10 there related to what?

11 A Project engineer for
12 foundation studies for Federal Buildings, slope
13 stability problems on federal land and so on.

14 Q Then for ten years there-
15 after you were chief engineer / ^{and} head of the Geotechni-
16 cal Division, Materials & Testing Laboratories with
17 R.M. Hardy & Associates?

18 A That's right, they were
19 dual companies at that time, Materials Testing
20 Laboratories and R.M. Hardy Associates, and they
21 were merged a few years ago under the one name of
22 R.M. Hardy & Associates.

23 Q And R.M. Hardy is the
24 gentleman sitting to your right.

25 A That's right, sir.

26 Q And what was your work
27 there, sir?

28 A It was practically all
29 of a geotechnical and engineering nature, foundation
30 engineering, slope stability work, some engineering

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 geology and rock mechanics, some permafrost work, quite
2 a wide variety of geotechnical studies and work.

3 Q And since 1972 I under-
4 stand you've been with Northern Engineering Services
5 Company Limited.

6 A That's right, sir.

7 Q And associated with this
8 project.

9 A Yes sir.

10 Q Were you associated
11 with it in any way before you came to Northern Engin-
12 eering?

13 A I was officially seconded
14 to Northern Engineering at about December 15, 1972, and
15 for some time -- a few months prior to that time I
16 had discussions with some geotechnical people there, as
17 well as within the Pemcan group, related to studies
18 that were being undertaken at that time.

19 Q And the schedule you've
20 filed shows that you're the author responsible for
21 ten publications, one of which was awarded the
22 Canadian Geotechnical Society prize.

23 A That's right, sir.

24 Q And what was your area
25 of responsibility in connection with the Arctic Gas
26 Pipeline project?

27 A I supervised the geo-
28 technical engineering as a component of the Northern
29 Engineering staff and in 1974 the Environmental Group
30 was merged with the Geotechnical Group, and I served

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

as supervisor of the combined group at this time.

Q Could I then turn, because it's the next one in my notes, to Dr. Hollingshead? You're the second from the left, Dr. Hollingshead, and your present position is as manager of River Engineering in the Northern Engineering Services Company and you came to there from R.M. Hardy & Associates.

A That's right, sir.

Q And you received a diploma in civil engineering from the Royal Military College in 1959, a Bachelor of Science in Civil Engineering from the University of Alberta in 1960, a Master of Science in 1965 from the same institution, and finally in 1973 you received a Ph.D. in civil engineering from Queens.

A That's right, sir.

Q Is that correct, and that was specializing again in soil mechanics and foundation engineering?

A Yes sir.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
in Chief

Q And your experience
briefly, from 1960 to 1963 was in the field in the
military field, military engineering, is that correct?

A That's right, with the
Royal Canadian Engineers.

Q And you spent one of
those years on the Northwest Highway System .

A Yes sir.

Q What is that, Dr.
Hollingshead?

A That was the name applied
by the military to the Canadian portion of what is
commonly known as the Alaska Highway, and up until
about 1963 the Department of National Defence was
responsible for the maintenance of that particular
highway. I was involved with that project.

Q And from 1965 to 1973
you were a professor of civil engineering at the Royal
Military College, is that right?

A Yes sir.

Q And you did some consult-
ing work in the interim period?

A Associated with a Toronto
firm during part of that period.

Q And from 1973 you've
been with the -- are you with R.M. Hardy?

A Yes sir.

Q You're not part of the --
are you part of Northern Engineering Services?

A Yes sir, I am with P.M.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

Hardy, seconded to Northern Engineering Services in
much the same manner as Dr. Clark.

Q And you published --
you also have about ten publications to your credit?

A Yes sir.

Q There are a list of
them in your schedule to your resume, and what was
your area of responsibility in connection with this
project?

A I have been given the
responsibility for the river crossing design work
which Northern Engineering is involved in.

Q May I move then to Dr.
McRoberts, the gentleman next to Mr. Williams. You
are a senior geotechnical engineer with Northern
Engineering Services Company?

WITNESS McROBERTS: Yes sir.

Q And you're seconded
again from R.M. Hardy & Associates.

A That is correct.

Q And your educational
background, you got your B.Sc., your M.Sc. and finally
your Ph.D. and we say here from Royal Military College
but it was from the University of Alberta. Is that
correct?

A Yes, that's correct.

Q You received your
doctorate in 1973.

A That's correct.

Q And you belong to the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 usual Associations of professional people in your
2 field.

3 A Yes sir.

4 Q And from 1968 to 1971
5 you were with the Canadian Forces?

6 A Yes sir.

7 Q What sort of work were
8 you doing, sir?

9 A First two years I was
10 involved in various aspects of geotechnical engineering
11 work. The last year I was in the Canadian Armed Forces
12 I spent as an assistant professor at the Royal Military
13 College in Kingston. At the end of my stay there
14 at the Royal Military College I went to the University
15 of Alberta to do my Ph.D. work.

16 Q And from there you went
17 to R.M. Hardy & Associates and then Northern Engineering
18 Services?

19 A That's correct.

20 Q And what is your area of
21 responsibility with Northern Engineering on this
22 pipeline project?

23 A Two areas, slope
24 stability, studies in permafrost, as well as in
25 geotechnical aspects of studies concerned with buried
26 pipelines.

27 Q And you have again a
28 number of publications that you have written, a
29 number of which I notice are in collaboration with
30 Dr. Morgenstern, who is one of our witnesses today.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

In Chief

A That's correct.

Q I move then to you, Dr.

Slusarchuk. I pronounce that correctly, do I?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: A Yes, you do.

Q You are with Northern
Engineering Services Company Limited via R.M. Hardy
& Associates Limited.

A Yes sir.

Q As manager of geotechnical
and geothermal studies.

A Yes sir.

Q Would you tell me what
that means?

A I am responsible for the
various studies in the geotechnical area, such as
design of foundations, slopes, pipe flow interaction
and so on, and also in the geological area. In the
geothermal studies I'm responsible to make sure that
we have the ability to predict the temperatures in
the ground with regard to this pipeline, and the
associated ancillary structures.

Q And you've a B.Sc. and
an M.Sc. in civil engineering, and you finally received
a Ph.D. in 1971 from Rutgers University in the United
States.

A That's correct, sir.

Q And I note that your
Master's thesis dealt with frost heave protection.

A Yes sir.

Q And also your PH.D.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams,
In Chief

thesis dealt with aspects of frost-heaving phenomenon.

A Yes, this is correct.

Q Your professional experience, sir, was spent, devoted firstly again as an officer in the Navy.

A Yes sir.

Q What sort of work did you do there?

A For the first year and a half I was more or less on board ship as a shipboard officer in engineering operations in the Navigations Department. Then I spent about six months as a construction officer designing alterations and additions to ships in the Naval Architect Division, and the last year, approximately for the last year, I spent as base development officer on the Atlantic Coast, and this was involved with major and minor construction and base maintenance along the Atlantic Coast.

Q Soil and geotechnics, I take it when you were at sea, were something the ships tried to avoid.

A Yes sir.

Q Then you became a research officer of the National Research Council of Canada, is that correct?

A Yes sir.

Q And you spent three years with the National Research Council?

A Yes sir.

Q And what was the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 direction of your specialty there?

2 A My research there was
3 mainly in permafrost engineering with emphasis on
4 foundation problems associated with construction of
5 northern pipelines.

6 Q For the Research Council?

7 A Yes sir, for the Research
8 Council.

9 Q And you joined Northern
10 Engineering in 1973.

11 A That is correct.

12 Q You did n't come via
13 R.M. Hardy & Associates?

14 A I joined R.M. Hardy &
15 Associates to join Northern Engineering Services.

16 Q What was your area of
17 responsibility in connection with the pipeline project?

18 A My initial responsibility
19 was with regard to the geothermal analysis. Shortly
20 thereafter I was also assigned responsibility for the
21 frost heaving, and more recently I've been given
22 responsibilities in the general permafrost engineering
23 area.

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

1 Q And we have a list of
2 some 14 publications which bear your name, is that
3 correct?

4 A That is correct, sir.

5 Q Now, Dr. Morgenstern,
6 if I may turn to you, sir, you are presently employed
7 as the professor of civil engineering at the
8 University of Alberta --

9 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

10 A Yes, correct.

11 Q And you are also a --
12 carry on practice as a consulting engineer, is
13 that correct?

14 A That is correct, yes.

15 Q You have received a
16 Bachelor of Applied Science in Civil Engineering
17 from the University of Toronto -- a D.I.C. -- I
18 forgot to ask you what that was.

19 A That is a Diploma of
20 Imperial College. It is equivalent to a Masters
21 Degree.

22 Q Equivalent to a Masters
23 Degree?

24 A Yes.

25 Q That is from the
26 Imperial College of Science. That is an English
27 institution, is it?

28 A University of London,
29 yes.

30 Q And you received your

1 PhD in Soil Mechanics from that university in 1964?

2 A That is correct.

3 Q And you have an enor-
4 mous number of professional affiliations. Without
5 taking you through everyone of these, I note that
6 you ~~were~~ a member of a -- it is not an expedition --
7 I do not think that that is the proper word of
8 whatever it is, of civil -- a mission of civil engin-
9 eers to Yugos~~l~~avia to report on earthquake effects?

10 A Yes, that was about
11 10 or 12 years ago.

12 Q You are a member of the
13 editorial board of the INternational Journal of
14 Rock Mechanics and Mining Sciences?

15 A Yes.

16 Q You are a member of the
17 editorial board of the Journal of Soil Mechanics and
18 Foundations of the American Society of Civil
19 Engineers?

20 A Yes.

21 Q You are a member of the
22 Canadian Advisory Committee on Rock Mechanics of the
23 Department of Energy, Mines and Resources of the
24 Government of Canada?

25 A Yes.

26 Q You are also a member
27 of the Associate Committee for Geotechnical Research
28 of the National REsearch Council of Canada?

29 A Yes.

30 Q You are a member of the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 Canadian National Committeee for Earthquake Engin-
2 eering?

3 A Yes.

4 Q That has nothing to do
5 with causing them, that is --

6 A Hopefully not --

7 Q Right.

8 You are a member of
9 the Earth Sciences Grant Selection Committee, National
10 Research Council of Canada. What does that organi-
11 zation, sir?

12 A That is one of the
13 Committees that selects the applications seeking
14 funding -- university people seeking funding from the
15 National Research Council to undertake research in the
16 earth sciences. It covers a wide range of activities,
17 geology, geophysics and geotechnical work.

18 Q You are also a member
19 of the editorial board of the bulletin of the
20 Association of Engineering Geologists.

21 A Yes.

22 Q And with Dr. Clark you
23 are a member of the organizing committeee on the Third
24 International Congress on Permafrost?

25 A Yes, that is right.

26 Q And sir, your pro-
27 fessional experience dates back from 1956 when you
28 were employed for a short while with a firm of
29 geotechnical consulting engineers and/^{then}you pursued a
30 course of studies and lecturing?

1 A Yes, that is right.

2 Q In 1968 you became
3 Professor of Civil Engineering at the University of
4 Alberta?

5 A Yes.

6 Q And you provided with
7 your resume a rather long list of consulting and
8 engagements which in particular refers to a number
9 of engagements on landslides and slope stability .

10 A Yes.

11 Q Your experience in
12 pipelines in particular is set out there. You were
13 engaged on the -- with Mackenzie Valley Pipeline
14 Research Limited ?

15 A Yes, that is correct?

16 Q Was that for the oil
17 pipeline --

18 A That was the oil
19 pipeline feasibility study undertaken a few years
20 ago.

21 Q What was your
22 function in that, sir?

23 A I established certain
24 design criteria for burial conditions and advised
25 generally on geotechnical aspects of that study.

26 Q And you have a number
27 of other projects -- E.W. Brooker, Limited -- what was
28 that for?

29 A That -- when they were
30 the geotechnical consultants to the Gas Arctic Study,

1 I assisted them on some of their studies at an early
2 stage.

3 Q The Centennial Gas
4 Pipeline -- it sounds like one of Mr. Gibbs --

5 A That was a proposal for a
6 Gas Pipeline to Vancouver Island that did not come
7 to fruition.

8 Q Stone and Webster
9 Engineering Corporation -- you did pipeline work
10 for them?

11 A Yes, but not in the sense
12 of a gas/oil pipeline -- these were problems associated
13 with marine burial of large diameter pipes off shore
14 for nuclear power plants.

15 Q And I have a note here --
16 I do not know if it is listed on the summary, that
17 you have been engaged in connection with the
18 Aleyska Pipeline --

19 A Yes, I am presently a
20 consultant to Aleyska.

21 Q And what field of work
22 again --

23 A With special reference
24 to problems of slope stability and the problems that
25 occur due to thaw beneath the right-of-way. I have
26 also reviewed some other parts of their design for
27 them.

28 Q And I am not going to
29 take you through your publications. I see there
30 there are
are 59 of them. But/perhaps more since that -- since

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams, -- In Chief

1 the summation --

2 A Since this preparation,
3 yes.

4 Q We are coming to the
5 end, Mr. Commissioner.

6 Dr. Cooper, I should ask any
7 of my friends who want to address vigourous cross-
8 examination to you to make you move because you are in
9 imminent danger of falling off the platform.

10 WITNESS COOPER:

11 A That is correct.

12 Q You sir, are ^a consulting
13 professional engineer --

14 A Yes --

15 Q And a principal of
16 Northwest Hydraulic Consultants Limited --

17 A That is right.

18 Q What is that company,
19 sir?

20 A It is a firm that
21 specializes in the area of Hydrology and River
22 engineering and also hydraulic model testing.

23 Q And you are an associate
24 in T. Blench -- B.L.E.N.C.H. -- and Associates Limited?

25 A Yes, that is an associated
26 company that has similar areas of responsibility.

27 Q And you have a BSc. and
28 MSc. in Civil Engineering and you have a Doctor's
29 Degree in Civil Engineering which was granted to you
30 by the University of Alberta in 1970, is that correct?

A That is correct.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams, -- In Chief

1 Q And the area of study
2 which was comprised in your doctoral thesis was
3 what, sir?

4 A Sediment transport which
5 more simply stated is the ability of flow, say, in
6 a river to move the material on the bed, the
7 ganular material on the bed and the effect of that
8 material on the flow itself.

9 Q And your professional
10 experience, sir, goes back to 1964 when you became
11 a research associate at the University of Alberta?

12 A That is correct.

13 Q In what field did you
14 concern yourself?

15 A In the same field that my
16 work for the PhD was carried out in -- I also did at
17 that time some commercial model testing while at
18 the university.

19 Q And then from 1972 you
20 became associated with the two firms we have just
21 named?

22 A Correct.

23 Q And both companies I
24 understand offer specialized engineering services in
25 the areas of hydrology and river engineering. --
26 Perhaps you could tell me what hydrology is -- someone
27 has told me but I have forgotten.

28 A Well, hydrology is essen-
29 tially from the point of view of our work, the
30 prediction and analysis of flows, both overland flows,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 ground water flows, etc.

2 Q And your work as a
3 consulting engineer has included the Aleyska project.
4 Were you retained as a consultant on that project,
5 sir ?

6 A That is right. We
7 were through our associated company, Northwest
8 Hydraulic Consultants.

9 Q And what did the
10 were
11 work for which you/retained to do, encompass?

12 A Myself, I was involved in
13 the establishment of design techniques in the planning
14 and supervision of design data collection programs, in
15 carrying out detailed reviews of their actual
16 design. In addition I was charged with the
17 responsibility of supervising our firm's input to the
18 project and our engineers did the detailed ^{river}/engineering
aspects of the individual crossing design.

19 Q And you have listed some
20 four publications of which you are the author, either
21 by yourself or jointly with others.

22 A That is correct.

23 Q And you were retained
24 as a consultant to Northern Engineering Services?

25 A Yes.

26 Q And what was your
27 area of responsibility?

28 A In many respects similar
29 to that I had with Aleyska, the development and
30 establishment of design techniques, making recommen-

1 dations for correction of preliminary design data
2 and the requirements -- or the data requirements for
3 ultimate final design. In many cases I have
4 reviewed their reports and made recommendations on
5 these.

6 Q Thank you. Next if I
7 could move to Dr. Hardy -- from what I read, Dr.
8 Hardy, you are sort of the grandfather of geotechnical
9 business in Canada.

10 WITNESS HARDY:

11 A Could be, I --

12 Q Or do I age you too
13 much?

14 A Do not worry about that,
15 sir.

16 Q You were, sir, until
17 1971 for eight years the dean of the Faculty of Engin-
18 eering at the University of Alberta?

19 A Yes, sir.

20 Q And you are now a
21 Professor Ameritus of Civil Engineering at that
22 institution?

23 A Yes, sir.

24 Q Were most of your co-
25 panel members students of yours?

26 A Not too many of them,
27 sir -- they -- I was actually teaching before their
28 times in most cases.

29 Q And you are also the
30 President of R.M. Hardy and Associates Limited which

1 is the firm engaged in the business of -- perhaps
2 you could tell us, describe briefly the business of
3 R.M. Hardy and Associates.
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 A Well, we're engaged in
2 the engineering aspects of all problems that involve
3 soils, and to a certain extent, rocks. That includes
4 foundations, buildings, and earth dams, highways,
5 railroads, and of course I have personally been inter-
6 ested in permafrost problems for a great many years,
7 dating back to 1944. So permafrost and pipelines, for
8 that matter, are in that field, and are subjects
9 that I have paid a good deal of attention to in the
10 past 20 years, 25 years.

11 Q And you have a B.Sc. and
12 an M.Sc. in civil engineering.

13 A Yes sir.

14 Q You have an honorary
15 Doctor of Science from the University of Manitoba.

16 A Yes sir.

17 Q Where you worked in the
18 field of soil mechanics and foundation engineering.

19 A That is correct.

20 Q You also have an honorary
21 Doctor of Science from the Royal Military College
22 granted to you in 1972.

23 A Yes sir.

24 Q So actually you didn't
25 have to write a thesis.

26 A I had to do certain
27 other things.

28 Q I understand that others
29 in this room may be visited by similar doctorates,
30 shortly. You're a Fellow of the Royal Society of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

Canada?

A Yes sir.

Q And you belong to the
usual Associations of engineers?

A Yes sir.

Q You were a member of the
Borden Royal Commission on Energy.

A Yes sir.

Q You were the technical
advisor to the Manning Royal Commission on the location
of the Pine Point Railway.

A Yes sir.

Q Which involved geotechni-
cal considerations of railway construction in muskeg
and permafrost terrain, is that correct?

A Yes sir.

Q And then you're a member
of the Alberta Research Council --

A Yes sir.

Q -- and have been since
1948.

A Yes sir,

Q A member of the Univer-
sities Commission of Alberta. You occupied that
position from '71 to '73.

A Yes, it was then
abandoned.

Q You're the past president
of the Dominion Council of Professional Engineers.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRobert's,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

A Yes sir.

Q A past vice-president of
the Engineering Institute of Canada.

A Yes sir.

Q A past president of the
Association of Professional Engineers of Alberta.

A Yes sir.

Q I don't know where to
stop, Dr. Hardy. You're also a member of a large
other number of organizations, and we have listed your
academic positions at the University of Alberta,
which culminated in your becoming dean of that
faculty in 1963. Is that correct?

A I was actually dean of
the faculty in 1946, sir, but I left the university in
1959.

Q I'm sorry, Dr. Hardy.

A But then I went back
in 1963.

Q What did you do between
1946 -- between 1959 and 1963?

A Well, I was active
full-time with R.M. Hardy & Associates, sir.

Q Now you received a
number of awards, sir, including the Centennial
Medal of the Government of Canada, the Centennial Award
of the Association of Professional Engineers of Alberta
for 1968, the R.F. Legget Award of the Canadian Geo-
technical Society in 1971 -- is that named, by the
way, after the Legget who testified here in the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 overview evidence?

2
3 A Yes sir.

4 Q You received the Canadian
5 Engineering Gold Medal for 1973 by the Canadian Council
6 of Professional Engineers.

7 A Yes sir.

8 Q And I understand that
9 you're also an officer of the Order of Canada.

10 A Yes sir. I would point
11 out, sir, that you missed a very important one that is
12 most relevant to this hearing, and that is the Keefer
13 Medal of the Engineering Institute of Canada in 1947
14 for a paper on permanently frozen ground and foundation
15 design, which was the first engineering paper, I
16 think, on permafrost that was produced in Canada.
17 That is probably why I'm here today.

18 Q In 1947, I'm sorry about
19 that; and your experience, sir, in geotechnical problems
20 and engineering problems has been considerable, I take
21 it. You've worked for the Northwest Study Group, the
22 Gas Arctic project, you helped Canadian Bechtel Limited
23 to do a feasibility study of the oil line on the
24 Mackenzie River.

25 A Yes sir.

26 Q You made -- you co-operated
27 or collaborated in your report to the Governor of
28 the State of Alaska concerning the Aley ~~ska~~ Pipeline.

29 A Yes, I participated in
30 that.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Q You've worked on an Arctic
2 Railway study.

3 A Yes sir.

4 Q What did your work con-
5 sist of in that regard?

6 A I did an overview of
7 the geotechnical implications of that project, that is
8 the current project that has been considered in the
9 last two years. The firm had one contract for one
10 section, but this -- my responsibility there was to
11 do an overview something like the overview that have
12 been produced for this Commission and were heard in
13 the first two days of the hearing.

14 Q All right.

15 A On the general geotechnical
16 implications and problems.

17 Q And you did some work for
18 a proposed C.N.R. Great Slave Lake Railway.

19 A Yes, I was heavily in-
20 volved in that.

21 Q What was that project,
22 sir? Or that plan.

23 A Well, it's the railroad
24 that went from close to Peace River, Alberta, to the
25 Pine Point development on Slave Lake, and so that was
26 through country that involved a lot of muskeg and
27 some permafrost, not continuous permafrost but discon-
28 tinuous permafrost, which can, of course, be very
29 troublesome.

30 Q What was the degree of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 your involvement, sir?

2 A Oh, I was very much in-
3 volved in the location of the railroad, and then in
4 special problems, special geotechnical problems such
5 as stability of permafrost and also muskeg problems.
6 I was personally involved in that work myself, I did
7 it myself.

8 Q You were also involved in
9 the Alaska Highway?

10 A Yes, that's when I first
11 got involved in permafrost, in fact the term was only
12 invented in the English language a year or two before,
13 I became involved in the Alaska Highway work. We did
14 the first engineering tests on permafrost that had
15 ever been done, I think it's fair to say, on this
16 continent. I did those myself in those days, and that
17 started my interest in permafrost problems.

18 Q Sir, you were also
19 involved in the development of the townsite for
20 Inuvik.

21 A I had certain input into
22 that through a firm called Foundation Engineering
23 Company of Canada, who had a contract for design of
24 utilities up there.

25 Q Were you employed as a
26 consultant?

27 A I was employed as a
28 consultant to them, yes.

29 Q And as far as your ex-
30 perience in pipeline projects generally is concerned,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 will you run over those briefly? You were involved in
2 the Trans-Mountain Pipeline in what capacity, sir?

3 A Well, I was consultant
4 to Canadian Bechtel Corporation on geotechnical problems
5 for the Trans-Mountain Pipeline, and that was the first
6 pipeline that the Bechtel Corporation had done engineer-
7 ing on in which they had had any geotechnical input
8 as far as, I'm aware, and the Trans-Mountain Pipeline
9 involved a real breakthrough as far as the industry
10 was concerned at that time. It was through very rough
11 mountainous country, and so they considered they should
12 have some geotechnical input but I did this all myself.
13 In other words, I was a one-man team, which is interest-
14 ing to see the development that's relevant to what's
15 going on here now, in that their work was done by one
16 man. We had no borings. The special problems I looked
17 at for stability problems, / ^{river} crossings, I had some
18 assistance from others, including Dr. Tom Blench, that
19 has been mentioned from the firm of T. Blench &
20 Associates. I got him interested in river crossing
21 problems, as a matter of fact on the Trans-Mountain
22 Pipeline, and so my involvement included all of the
23 geotechnical work that was done on the Trans-Mountain
24 Pipeline, and of course I've done periodically ever
25 since, have done work on their system involving
26 special stability problems.

27 Q You were also, sir,
28 involved with the Westcoast Transmission Company in
29 connection with their gas pipeline?

30 A My participation there

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 was much the same as on Trans-Mountain and originally
2 was for Canadian Bechtel Corporation.

3 Q And that traverses
4 difficult country?

5 A Yes, just as difficult
6 really as on Trans-Mountain, but they came second
7 so that some of the problems were solved.

8 Q Alberta & Southern
9 Gas Company Pipeline, where is that located?

10 A Well, it includes the
11 gathering system in Alberta, and some of that work
12 was done directly for Alberta Gas Trunk, other items
13 were done through Canadian Bechtel.

14 Q Then you acted in connec-
15 tion with Pacific Gas & Electric Gas Transmission
16 Line from B.C. border to the California border.

17 A That again was for the
18 Bechtel Corporation and involved special geotechnical
19 problems, and even at that time they were not ever
20 thinking about the scope of geotechnical work being
21 what is being applied to the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline,
22 or any of the Arctic pipeline proposals.

23 Q You were also, sir,
24 involved with Alberta Gas Trunklines in the construction
25 of certain sections of their pipeline.

26 A Yes, particularly the
27 line that runs down through the foothills country
28 from up north of Edson, actually, down through Edson
29 and right down to Coleman.
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 Q Same kind of work again,
2 Dr. Hardy?

3 A Same kind of work.

4 Q And you have been engaged
5 as a consultant of the proposed Shell Oil Sulphur
6 Pipeline form Alberta to Vancouver?

7 A Yes, that was a special
8 project.

9 Q Is that still in the plan-
10 ning stage?

11 A Oh, I think it was shelved
12 but it was active at the time and was -- they got to
13 the point of actually preparing design plans. It was
14 fully designed, but they did not have construction
15 plans and that involved of course stability problems
16 and river crossing problems from Southern Alberta
17 out to Vancouver.

18 Q Did they have a hearing?

19 A I think they got shot
20 down before the hearing, sir.

21 Q I have a note that you
22 are also involved in two other pipeline projects, the
23 Northern Pacific Gas Line and the Great Canadian Oil
24 Sands, McMurray to Edmonton line.

25 A Well, yes, the Northern
26 Pacific is a small gas line that runs from close to
27 Prince George, out to Prince Rupert and they do not
28 have permafrost in there, but they have most other
29 problems that you could possibly have of a geotechnical
30 nature. The Great Canadian Oil Sands Pipeline runs

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 from McMurray down to Edmonton and they have had
2 one recent development that is of a geotechnical
3 nature and that has -- we are handling that through
4 the firm with -- I have ^{been} giving it a certain amount
5 of personal attention as well -- stability of slopes.

6 Q Your synopsis lists
7 a large number of other projects which I might call
8 not associated with pipelines such as dams --

9 A That is correct, sir.

10 Q -- and so on that I will
11 not trouble to take you over with in detail. You are
12 also the author of at least 64 publications which
13 we have listed.

14 A Yes, sir.

15 Q Thank you, Dr. Hardy.
16 I may move on now, Mr. Commissioner to the examination
17 of this panel which will follow the synopsis that
18 I have provided to the Commission, my friends.

19 The first question perhaps
20 inserted at my request, was addressed to Dr.
21 Clark and asks what does the expression "geotechnical"
22 mean?

23 WITNESS CLARK:

24 A I understand your
25 request because the word "geotechnical" does not
26 appear in any dictionary known to me, but the word
27 "geotechniques" does. And the word "geotechnical"
28 as we use it pertains to "geotechniques". In this
29 sense it refers to the application of scientific
30 methods and engineering principles, to the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 acquisition, interpretation and use of knowledge of
2 materials of the earth's crust to the solution of
3 engineering problems.

4 "Geotechnical" embraces the
5 field of soil mechanics, rock mechanics and engineering
6 aspects of geology, geophysics, hydrology and related
7 sciences.

8 Q Could we just explain
9 these. What are "soil mechanics"?

10 A Well, soil mechanics
11 is in essence what used to be what geotechnical
12 is now. We were all referred to at one time as
13 soils engineers. It is in essence the understanding
14 of ^{the}behaviour of soils, the mechanical behaviour --
15 what we call engineering properties, such as strength,
16 permeability, compressability.

17 Q And why is that relevant,
18 sir, to the construction of the pipeline?

19 A Well, in particular,
20 this pipeline, one of the most relevant aspects of
21 soil mechanics is the behaviour of frozen soil as
22 we do cross extensive lengths of permafrost. It is
23 also relative to such things as the stability of
24 slopes and foundations for structures.

25 Q And what in particular is
26 the role of your branch of the science in connection
27 with this pipeline project?

28 A Well, the geotechnical
29 engineers have been intimately involved with all aspects
30 of the project which relate to terrain conditions.

1 In the initial stages of the project involvement was
2 with selection of the arctic tests sites and the
3 development of test programs to be carried out
4 at these sites. The route location that currently
5 appears on the alignment sheets was developed by
6 geotechnical personnel working in conjunction with
7 pipeline location engineers and others.

8 Q What others?

9 A Oh, they would include,
10 geologists, hydrologists and the staff botanists,
11 plant ecologists, biologists. Geotechnical engineers
12 also deal with the analysis and design for river
13 crossings and slope stability, drainage and erosion
14 control measures, frost heave, pipe/soil interaction
15 and the foundations for compressor stations and
16 ancilliary structures as well as roadways and air
17 strips.

18 Q Pipe/soil interaction --

19 I have a little trouble with that expression. What
20 does that encompass?

21 A Well, this is the inter-
22 relationship between the pipe and the soil, when the
23 pipe is buried in the ground. For instance, where the
24 pipe makes a bend there is a certain stress in the pipe.
25 At that bend there is what we call a reaction -- that
26 is a force exerted against the ground and that
27 force has to be resisted by the wall of the ditch
28 and we would assess the capability of the wall of the
29 ditch to resist that force. It also involves burial
30 -- depth of burial and the back fill requirements for

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 certain situations and so on.

2 Now, the geothermal analysis
3 and geological investigations carried out for the
4 project were also done by or in conjunction with
5 geotechnical engineers.

6 Q What is geothermal
7 analysis ?

8 A Well, Dr. Slusarchuk,
9 my colleague on the right, has been most intimately
10 involved in that for several years and I would ask him
11 to amplify on that.

12 Q I do not want a
13 great amplification, Dr. Slusarchuk.

14 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

15 A Geothermal analysis
16 and terms that we refer to it involve measuring,
17 analysing and predicting the temperatures in the
18 ground and the possible changes that these temperatures
19 may undergo as a result of the construction of the
20 pipeline and the ancilliary facilities.

21 Q Now, Dr. Clark, were the
22 portions of this application or the pipeline dealing
23 with a geotechnical aspects prepared under your super-
24 vision?

25 WITNESS CLARK:

26 A Yes, sir, by geotechni-
27 cal personnel. Several geotechnical studies have been
28 completed by the geotechnical group and their con-
29 sultants. In our view this demonstrates the feasibility
30 of the pipeline. WE are continuing geotechnical

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 studies in order to optimize the design techniques
2 that are now available.

3 Q Could you explain what
4 you mean by optimizing the design techniques?

5 A Well, briefly we feel
6 that we are now capable of designing the pipeline for
7 virtually every situation that might be encountered
8 from the geotechnical point of view. In many cases
9 we feel that these current designs are over con-
10 servative and thus fairly costly. During the next
11 couple of years we expect that our ongoing work
12 will result in a more optimum -- a better design,
13 a design that would be more economical, and not a
14 case of overkill.

15 Q And is that what you
16 mean by "over conservative"? A word that Mr.
17 Scott might misunderstand?

18 A Yes, they are very,
19 very conservative, some of the designs that are now
20 proposed and I think that we will probably deal in
21 more detail with these aspects later on in this
22 testimony.

23 Q Sir, could you discuss
24 the special considerations of the proposed pipeline
25 which affect this pipeline here in the north from
26 the geotechnical point of view?

27 A Well, the special
28 geotechnical features of the proposed pipeline
29 relate to the extensive length that will pass
30 through permafrost terrain and the operation of a

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 system of temperatures below 32 degrees Farenheit.
2 The first is not unique, however, because some
3 gas pipelines have been constructed through small
4 patches of permafrost located in the Yukon and the
5 Northwest Territories as well as in the Northern
6 portion of Alberta and --

7 Q Can I ask you which
8 those ask you which those are?

9 A I am thinking particularly
10 of the Pointed Mountain Line, the Westcoast Transmission

11 Q Where does that go?
12 From where to where?

13 A Dr. Hardy could perhaps
14 pinpoint that a little more closely because I believe
15 he has --

16 WITNESS HARDY:

17 A Yes, it runs --
18 well, there is no other geographical area that
19 we can identify it by, sir.

20 WITNESS CLARK:

21 A It runs by Pointed Moun-
22 tain.

23 WITNESS HARDY:

24 A --the Vernon River
25 and simply runs to Pointed Mountain --

26 MR. GENEST:

27 Q Could you speak into
28 the microphone, please, Dr., we cannot hear you.

29 A There are no
30 settlements that identify the beginnning and

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 end of that line. It is an extension of the
2 Westcoast Transmission system up into the Territories.
3 It runs across a corner of the Yukon Territory
4 and then on to Pointed Mountain in the Northwest
5 Territories. I cannot give you any better descrip-
6 tion of that except that it is not very long. It
7 is only about 30 miles long, but it is an extension up
8 into the Territories of the Westcoast Transmission
9 system that runs down to Vancouver and ties into
10 the American system.

11 Q Are there other
12 pipelines, you want to continue, Dr. Clark?

13 WITNESS CLARK:

14 A There are of course
15 other pipelines operating for the past few years
16 in permafrost terrain in the U.S.S.R. in parts of
17 Siberia.

18 Q Do you know anything
19 about them, have you been able to gain any knowledge
20 that is of any dependable sort from the experience
21 of the Russians in Siberia -- I mean the pipeline
22 experience of the Russians?

23 A Well, we have some know-
24 ledge of their experience since there are formal
25 exchanges of visiting scientists or engineers and
26 members of the Canadian Gas Arctic have visited
27 Russia with the view to touring their pipeline
28 facilities and even you now, I think it is later
29 on this week, a group of twelve Russian scientists
30 visiting our offices and our test facilities in Calgary.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 They have shown particular interest in our
2 frost heave work. Also, I believe it is three
3 members of this panel -- Dr. Slusarchuk, Dr. Hardy and
4 Dr. Morgenstern, were at the last International
5 Permafrost Conference in Yakutsk and they took ad-
6 vantage of that opportunity to explore some areas of
7 mutual concern with pipeline engineers that they met
8 and I believe Dr. Morgenstern did arrange a meeting
9 there that was attended by these three plus others
10 to discuss some of these. I think in general we
11 have not picked up a great deal of information. It
12 tends to be somewhat of a one way -- we seem to offer
13 more than we get back. I think that is because
14 there is a wider separation with -- between the
15 technical people there and the people attending
16 conferences or going on international tours, whereas
17 here our people at the working level are involved in
18 the technical conferences and implementation of
19 design as well as development.

20 Q Do you have anything to
21 add to that, Dr. Morgenstern?
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams

WITNESS MORGENSTERN: We did

1 learn that the Russians seemed to be very interested
2 in our control of temperature capability on a large
3 gas pipeline. They seemed envious of that technology.
4 We found that certainly they had envirable construction
5 experience, piping in permafrost; but by and large
6 we were disappointed in the amount of analysis and
7 design and certainly environmental considerations, seepage
8 and erosion control, drainage, that they implemented.
9 They seemed to be post construction in their
10 attitude and not pre-construction in the sense of
11 anticipating problems.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Just before
13 we leave this, Mr. Genest, you said, Dr. Hardy, that
14 Pointed Mountain was a pipeline 30 miles in length?

15 WITNESS HARDY: Somewhat
16 less than 30 miles, yes.

17 Q Well, could Dr. Clark
18 or Dr. Morgenstern -- these pipelines in the U.S.S.R.,
19 have they been constructed in areas of continuous
20 permafrost, and if so, for what distance? Do you
21 know, have you been advised of that?

22 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: They have
23 long pipelines. I can't tell you how many hundreds of
24 miles, but long pipelines in continuous permafrost, yes.

25 Q Is that all we know
26 about them?

27 A Well, we saw some parts
28 near Yakutsk
29 of them, /some parts were buried, some parts came out
30 of the ground. The documentation that we were given

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 was pretty meager. We do know lengths, we know pressures
2 and diameters, but detailed engineering performance has
3 been elusive so far.

4 Q Well, you propose to
5 chill the gas in this Arctic Gas pipeline?

6 A Yes.

7 Q Is it apparent to you
8 where the Russian pipelines carrying gas are beneath
9 the ground, in permafrost, the gas is in fact chilled?

10 A They don't control the
11 temperature, no. They -- the pipelines that we saw,
12 any chilling would have just been natural, would
13 pick up the temperature of the environment.

14 WITNESS HARDY: It should
15 be added, I think, sir, that where --

16 MR. GENEST: Would you spell
17 that for the reporters?

18 WITNESS HARDY: Yakutskt, Y-A-K-U-T-S-K-T.

19 I agree with what Dr. Morgenstern has said in
20 his appraisal of conditions. The pipelines we saw
21 were in the Yakutskt area and the geological conditions
22 are quite different than any we have in Canada, and the
23 run-off conditions are quite different. It is largely
24 sand. They have no segregated ice. They have no problems
25 of frost heaving.

26 Q I see.

27 A And in one stream cross-
28 ing we saw, they just floated across on the water and
29 let it freeze in the winter. They just don't have the
30 sort of run-off problems that we have.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief
Q I see.

1
2 A There are other areas
3 in Russia, of course, further north and west of
4 Yakutsk where the conditions are more comparable to
5 our conditions in the Canadian north, and quite differ-
6 ent from what we saw in Yakutsk. But I saw nothing that
7 would lead you to believe that their technology was
8 far advanced as compared to ours. Up to a point they
9 were very co-operative in discussing their components,
10 and they're as anxious to learn as we were. The main
11 barrier was language.

12 Q Dr. Clark, I've been
13 asking you about the special features of the special
14 considerations that affect this pipeline as opposed
15 to others from a geotechnical point of view and I
16 think I interrupted you.

17 WITNESS CLARK: A Yes sir. Well on this
18 project one of the most important geotechnical con-
19 siderations is the original temperature of the ground
20 and the effect that the activities associated with
21 construction and operation of a pipeline and the
22 ancillary structures will have on these temperatures,
23 and the consequent behaviour of the soil. A change
24 in temperature, for instance, may cause soils which
25 were originally frozen, to thaw, and other soils which
26 were unfrozen to freeze. Now most soils, when they
27 change from the frozen to the thawed stage -- or from
28 the unfrozen to the frozen state, their strength,
29 settlement and permeability characteristics also change
30 and these are characteristics that are of great

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 importance to us and their property changes must be
2 taken into account in design.

3 Q When you say "their
4 settlement characteristics change" --

5 A Yes, for instance in
6 ice-rich soil, when it thaws it will settle and it
7 will squeeze out water. That's compressability,
8 really, is a property, a soil mechanics property;
9 the strength, I think, is fairly apparent because
10 frozen soil will normally have greater strength than
11 an unfrozen soil.

12 Q And permeability is --

13 A Yes --

14 Q -- the ability to conduct
15 water?

16 A -- that's right.

17 Q And if that changes, what
18 happens?

19 A It affects the properties
20 and the behaviour of the soil. For instance, when a
21 soil that is thawed then freezes, the permeability is
22 substantially reduced.

23 Q So that water can't
24 percolate through that ground?

25 A Yes, at much lower
26 rates.

27 We have obtained ori-
28 ginal ground temperatures from more than 100 locations
29 along the pipeline route, and in order to predict the
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 effects of construction and operation on the ground
2 thermal regime, a computer --

3 Q I'm sorry to keep inter-
4 rupting you, the "ground thermal regime" is what?
5 That's not a political regime, I take it?

6 A That's the behaviour of
7 the ground temperatures, the changes in ground temper-
8 atures that might follow a change in surface conditions
9 and so on, and in order to predict this, computer
10 programs have either been developed or licenced for
11 use. Now the results of these geothermal studies using
12 computer programs, are then used in the geotechnical
13 considerations of river crossings, slope stability
14 analysis, drainage and erosion control, pipe buoyancy
15 and frost heaving, right-of-way behaviour, in essence,
16 all of the work having to do with frozen soil.

17 Q Perhaps you could explain,
18 or someone could explain how a computer program can
19 help you arrive at these -- what you're trying to arrive
20 at, I think, is a prediction of behaviour.

21 A Yes. In order to design
22 we must be able to predict, and again Dr. Slusarchuk
23 has been working very closely in this area, and --

24 Q Will you explain in a
25 few two-syllable words, Dr. Slusarchuk, how this works?

26 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Mainly
27 as a result of our geothermal computer programs to
28 assist us in predicting the temperatures in the ground
29 and particularly to determine the position of the
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 freezing or the thawing front. Once you can determine
2 that, you then make use of that information in your
3 standard soils work in order to design things such as
4 river crossings, slope stability, drainage and erosion,
5 and so on.

6 Q What goes into the
7 computer?

8 A The input to the computer
9 -- the various parameters such as the thermal propert-
10 ies of the ground, the air temperature, the -- if we
11 are looking at a right-of-way cross-section for example,
12 we put in a pipe and the pipe temperature, in other words
13 we model thermally on a computer exactly what we are
14 proposing to build and do in the field.

15 Q And these, if you didn't
16 have a computer, would have to be worked out by formulas,
17 I take it.

18 A Yes, that's right, and
19 some of the problems are a little more complicated than
20 the mathematicians have been able to work out solutions
21 for us, so we make use of the computer in order to
22 come up with these answers.

23 Q Well then back to you,
24 Dr. Clark. I was talking about special considerations.

25 WITNESS CLARK: Yes sir.

26 Well, another area that requires special considerations
27 is the river crossings because of the presence of
28 permafrost in the banks and the valley slopes. Now
29 in the rivers, however, the water which is above freez-
30 ing, precludes the formation of permafrost directly

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 under the beds of the larger rivers, even along the
2 Arctic coast.

3 Q Can I stop you again
4 there? You say they require -- what does the presence
5 of permafrost in the river banks and valley slopes
6 present, what special problems do you have?

7 A Well, we must be able to
8 predict what we are doing would bring about a change
9 in the permafrost condition, that might cause existing
10 permafrost to melt, in that circumstance we must be
11 able to assess the stability of that slope in the
12 unfrozen condition. It's a special consideration be-
13 cause it differs in this respect from the many hundreds
14 of river crossings that have been constructed in more
15 temperate regions.

16 Q And we're going to deal
17 later on in your evidence with how we attack those
18 problems.

19 A Yes, we will be dealing
20 with that in some detail. Another common feature of
21 rivers of the north, particularly along the Arctic
22 coast, is the occurrence of icings. These consist of
23 thick deposits of ice which are caused by water under
24 pressure being blocked by freezing, forcing itself up
25 to the surface to the river and this again is a special
26 consideration not encountered in rivers in more
27 temperate regions.

28 Now since the Mackenzie River
29 itself flows in a northerly direction, the ice breakup
30 in the upstream reaches will precede the breakup in the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 northern region by several weeks. As a result, major
2 ice jams can occur during spring breakup. This results
3 in a temporary increase in upstream water level and
4 introduces a possibility of river bed scour.
5

6 Q Let's just stop there for
7 a minute, Dr. Clark, because these so-called scours
8 when I first encountered it, caused problems with me.
9 We talked about scour and ice scour and ice gouging,
10 could you explain what these phenomena are, how they
11 are caused, very briefly?

12 A Well, scour used in this
13 sense is the deepening of the river bed by the flow of
14 water, and it's associated with an ice jam for instance,
15 a dam is created, the head of water is increased result-
16 ing in a greater velocity of flow under the ice jam, and
17 it has a higher potential to pick up and carry river
18 bed materials.

19 Q What scours the bed,
20 is that ice?

21 A That is scour. Ice
22 scouring, we generally refer to as ice gouging, but
23 at a later stage Dr. Hollingshead will be presenting
24 more detail on this, and perhaps illustrating it. It
25 might be a little clearer with slides.

26 Q But just to satisfy me,
27 when you speak of ice scour, we are talking about the
28 action of the water which is forced down into the stream
29 bed, it's not the gouging by the ice itself.

30 A No, the gouging by the
ice itself is something different. This occurs along

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 banks and so on and in shallow reaches that can gouge.

2 All of these aspects of river crossing have been
3 considered for river crossing design, have been con-
4 sidered for the major crossings.

5 Now with respect to slopes,
6 again this is an area of major consideration. The
7 steeper slopes along the route are located primarily
8 at approaches to river crossings. Along the rest of
9 the route about 95% of the terrain is flat to gently
10 undulating with slopes less than three degrees. In
11 general, the experience in the north has shown that
12 slopes of less than three degrees are stable, irrespec-
13 tive of the existing soil conditions.

14 Q By "stable" you mean
15 they don't move, they don't slide?

16 A They show no signs of
17 what we would call slope failure. However, special
18 considerations must be given to the stability of ice
19 risk permafrost slopes which may thaw or may creep
20 in the frozen condition.

21 Q Now is that true of
22 slopes even less than three degrees?

23 A No sir, it would be over.

24 Q Over three degrees.

25 A Where they would require
26 special consideration. Another area of some concern,
27 even though only a relatively short section of the route,
28 and that is on the eastern flanks of the Richardson
29 Mountain, is in an area of moderate potential for
30 seismic activity. The effects of such activity on the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 stability of slopes has been considered. Now where
2 slopes are on or adjacent to the right-of-way are
3 considered to be marginally stable, and where slope
4 failure may in the future effect the stability of the
5 pipeline or cause some unacceptable erosion, it
6 will be necessary just to stabilize these slopes, or
7 in cases where there's some question, to monitor and
8 to determine if the slope does in fact require stabiliz-
9 ation.

10 Q And you shall be
11 dealing later on, sir, with the techniques that you
12 have for --

13 A Yes, we'll be illustrating
14 our slope stability program and some of the stabiliza-
15 tion techniques.

16 Q Then would you go on
17 with the special considerations?

18 A Well, a consideration
19 which is not unique, of course, because it applies to
20 all gas pipelines, and that is the average specific
21 gravity of the pipe is less than that of water.
22 So there is a tendency for the pipe to float due to
23 buoyant forces. In areas where there is a potential for
24 buoyancy such as at river crossings or across active
25 flood plains, it's necessary to restrain the pipe,
26 using the usual technique provided by weight around
27 the pipe, by anchoring the pipe in the ground, by
28 burying the pipe deeper so there is more soil above the
29 pipe to adequately weigh it down.

30 Now in the continuous permafrost

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 zone, buoyancy may be controlled as well by flooding
2 the ditch, and by this I mean controlled flooding,
3 in the winter to prevent the thaw from advancing to
4 below the pipe during the summer period when it's not
5 in operation. That is the first summer following con-
6 struction.

7
8 Q Let me see if I follow
9 that. You're going to control the floating of the
10 pipe by flooding the ditch.

11 A Yes, it would be flooded
12 at such a rate that it would not be buoyant. In other
13 words, a portion of the ditch would be filled, it
14 would be allowed to freeze, and then if necessary,
15 more of the ditch would be filled. This imparts a higher
16 latent heat to it, it prevents the thaw front from
17 going below the pipe, and it also creates an add freeze
18 between the ice and pipe to hold it down in place.

19 Q So it stays frozen, in
20 other words?

21 A It stays frozen, yes,

22 Q You then get the floating
23 effect.

24 A Yes, and you don't get
25 rapid infiltration with water then. You put the water
26 in at the rate that you want to put it in, and let it
27 freeze.

28 MR. GENEST:

29 Sir, was it your
30 intention t o have a break today, or to go right
through till five?

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, we'll

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 take a break now, if you wish.

2 MR. GENEST: This is a good
3 place for it, sir.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: We'll adjourn
5 for ten minutes.

6 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR TEN MINUTES)

7 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

8 MR. GENEST: Dr. Clark, just
9 before the break you'd finished with the problems --
10 or at least your description of the special considera-
11 tion relating to pipe buoyancy. Would you move on
12 to --

13 A Yes sir.

14 Q -- other areas?

15 A A further geotechnical
16 consideration is frost heaving, which arises because
17 the pipeline is to be operated at temperatures below
18 32 degrees Fahrenheit. Pipeline from the Arctic coast
19 to about the 60th Parallel is operated throughout the
20 year below freezing temperatures, so that when the
21 pipeline passes through unfrozen ground, the potential
22 for frost heaving exists.

23 Q We had a little bit of
24 that in the overview, Dr. Clark, but it might help
25 others, as it would help me certainly, if you just
26 went over, what is the problem of frost heaving/as it ^{in general}
27 affects a pipeline?

28 A Well, from the Arctic
29 coast and along -- let me deal first with the continu-
30 ous zone. In the continuous zone there are small

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 localized areas of unfrozen ground. The pipeline is
2 carrying gas at temperatures below the freezing point
3 of water, and this causes the ground around it to
4 freeze. Wherever this happens, the potential exists.
5 The severity or the amount of frost heave that may occur
6 depends upon several factors, one of the most significant
7 is the soil type, and others the availability of water.
8 Dr. Slusarchuk later will be dealing in considerable
9 more detail with the work that has gone into assessing
10 this potential problem, and some of the design solutions
11 that are available.

12 Q The consideration then,
13 as I understand you, is the pipeline might be moved.

14 A Yes sir.

15 Q By a movement of the soil
16 caused by frost.

17 A Yes sir.

18 Q Do I understand that
19 correctly?

20 A That's right, and it's the
21 stresses in the pipeline associated with that movement
22 that are primarily of concern.

23 Q Right, Would you proceed,
24 please, doctor?

25 A Yes, as I was saying, in
26 the continuous permafrost zone there are only minor
27 isolated areas of unfrozen ground such as the river
28 crossings, but in the discontinuous permafrost zone,
29 the unfrozen areas are present along the right-of-way
30 as well as at river crossings. Now the extent of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 these unfrozen areas increases as one progresses in a
2 southerly direction, so that a considerable amount of
3 the unfrozen soil exists near the 60th Parallel. Now
4 in these areas, if the amount of differential heave and
5 this is of concern, this is what imparts the stress,
6 it's the differential, not the total heave, there has
7 to be a differential heave to impart stress to the
8 pipe.

9 Q If you have a piece of
10 pipe in one piece of ground that stays where it is,
11 and another piece of ground starts to push the pipe
12 up, then that imparts a stress to the pipeline.

13 A Yes sir. Now if we
14 determine that this has a potential to be excessive,
15 preventative measures will be designed into the system.
16 Now these measures may consist of surcharging the ground
17 surface, for example, or replacing frost-susceptible
18 soil with non-frost-susceptible soil.

19 Q Just hold on a minute,
20 doctor, what is "surcharging the ground surface"? To
21 lawyers that means something entirely different, I'm
22 sure, than it means to engineers. That's a no-no, a
23 surcharge.

24 A Well, it's -- in engineer-
25 ing it's a very useful technique in several aspects of
26 engineering. What we are doing is placing a greater
27 load on the pipe. Our studies have found, as Dr.
28 Slusarchuk will show later, that the rate of frost
29 heaving is substantially reduced as the load at the
30 freezing front -- that is the bottom of the frost zone

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper.
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 as that increases, the rate of heaving decreases
2 substantially.

3 Q So surcharging is putting
4 more stuff on top of the pipe?

5 A Yes sir.

6 Q All right.

7 A Now other techniques, as
8 I mentioned, in order to have the formation of ice
9 lenses, it must have water so another technique would
10 be to inhibit or restrict the water from migrating
11 through unfrozen soils. These are techniques, of course,
12 that are used commonly in the seasonal frost problem
13 as well, this technique of inhibiting ground water flow.

14 Another method, of course, is
15 to reduce the heat flux away from the frost front so
16 that the amount of water that can be frozen there is
17 minimized, and Dr. Slusarchuk will provide details on
18 all these aspects later.

19 Q Will you tell us what
20 the heat flux is?

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q Tell us now.

23 A I don't want to detract
24 from what he might want to say, but the heat flux is
25 actually the flow of heat through any given area.
26 If that clears it?

27 Q Not really. Well now
28 how are geotechnical considerations affected by
29 environmental concerns?
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Now the environmental and geotechnical groups at
2 Northern Engineering were merged in March of 1974 and
3 they have been operating under my direction. There is
4 a considerable inter-relationship between biologist,
5 plantecologists and engineers in matters of mutual
6 concern. Environmental consultants and staff biologists
7 have participated in route location, feasibility studies,
8 and special studies relating to specific engineering
9 requirements. A major segment of the environmental
10 program that has been carried out to date has been a
11 collection of baseline data which provide a better
12 understanding of the eco-systems along the route and
13 form much of the basis for addressing environmental
14 concerns in final design and in assessing impact.

15 Now examples of inter-disciplin-
16 ary studies include the assessment of borrow areas and
17 rehabilitation schemes, as outlined in our report,
18 pipeline related borrow studies of March '74, also the
19 development of preliminary designs of river crossings
20 as described in our report on preliminary design of
21 river crossings of July, 1974 and December 1974, and
22 one of the reports that you filed this morning is an
23 inter-disciplinary study of the borrow pit operations
24 along the Aleyeska Pipeline route carried out by a
25 geotechnical engineer and a fish biologist.

26 The development of drainage
27 and erosion control measures, as they appear in the
28 alignment sheets, ^{and} are described in the application is
29 another example of inter-disciplinary approach to design.
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Several meetings between design engineers and environ-
2 mental consultants have been hdd on this subject of
3 draining and erosion control.

4 Q This drainage and erosion
5 control, is that -- does that have just an impact on
6 the integrity of the pipeline, or does it also have
7 other consequences?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 A There are other
2 consequences. I think the development, design of
3 drainage and erosion control measures is of considerable
4 importance to the pipeline owners since the integrity
5 could be affected, but it is also important to pre-
6 vent siltation occurring in rivers or denuding of
7 certain areas if the measures are not properly
8 designed and implemented.

9 Now, another example of our
10 engineering and environmental interrelationship
11 which provides means of identifying environmental
12 concerns is interdisciplinary field reconnaissance
13 of the route and the ancilliary sites. Several
14 of these have been made in Alaska and Canada and more
15 will be made as required for final design.

16 Q Interdisciplinary means
17 that you have more than one kind of expert going
18 along on a trip?

19 A Yes, sir --

20 Q Right --

21 A For example, we have
22 recently had a -- or late last summer we had
23 a reconnaissance of Alaskan portions of Canada where
24 we had a wild life biologist, a fisheries biologist,
25 an ornithologist, civil engineers, geotechnical
26 engineers and so on.

27 Q Will you require more of
28 these for the final design stage of the --

29 A Yes, we would
30 expect to be looking particularly at such things as

Clark, Nollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams --- In Chief

1 borrow pits. The environmental consultants have looked
2 at our strip maps and at the development plans that
3 we have illustrated in our report and they have
4 advised us now to some extent on the sensitivity of
5 these and this will require further field reconnaissance
6 to confirm what the potential for environmental con-
7 cerns is at those areas.

8 Q Now, could you -- I
9 would like to move on now to the subject of the
10 studies in your field of expertise that were under-
11 taken by Arctic Gas or by your organization for Arctic
12 Gas.

13 A Well, we can perhaps
14 for convenience classify the studies into three
15 separate groups, each of which includes several func-
16 tions.

17 These are, number one, the
18 field studies and these studies have concerned them-
19 selves with terrain and geological reconnaissance,
20 the test drilling and the hydrological and river
21 engineering studies.

22 The second would be office
23 studies, again, which concerns itself with terrain
24 studies, the geothermal studies, the hydrological and
25 river engineering studies and studies of special
26 terrain problems.

27 The third grouping would be
28 the test site studies, and these include meteorological
29 studies, geothermal studies and again special terrain
30 problem studies.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 Q And these are all
2 described in what we filed at the beginning of
3 your evidence as an exhibit that was Appendix "B" to
4 the summary of your evidence?

5 A Yes, sir, they were.

6 Q I would like to move
7 to the test sites, Dr. Clark. Would you please
8 describe the test sites that were established to
9 gather geotechnical data.

10 A Yes, sir, pipeline
11 research facilities had been constructed and operated
12 in three locations in the northern regions
13 of Canada, in Alaska, in order to gather the data
14 and gain experience which would assist us in the
15 design of a reliable, safe and environmentally sound
16 pipeline system. The location selected for these
17 studies were Prudhoe Bay in Alaska, Sans Sault
18 Rapids and Norman Wells in the Northwest Territories.
19 The test sites were carefully selected to provide
20 permafrost and terrain conditions which were
21 representative of considerable lengths of the pro-
22 posed route. This realized that the pipeline would
23 encounter terrain units and conditions different
24 from those that could be selected at any given
25 site. The site conditions selected tended towards
26 the more difficult end of the possible range.

27 Now, since it was not possible
28 to gather data on the complete range of geothermal
29 and meteorological conditions along the proposed
30 route at the test facilities, a large number of remote

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
~~S~~lusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In chief

1 ground temperature measurement sites were established
2 along the right-of-way.

3 Q Just about how many --
4 can we name that number?

5 A There was over a hundred,
6 sir, I think that it is about 115.

7 Q Right --

8 A Now, a fourth test
9 facility was built and it is currently^{under}/operation in
10 Calgary, Alberta, in order to study the frost
11 effects caused by operating a buried, chilled gas
12 pipeline in unfrozen, frost susceptible soil.

13 Q Mr. Williams, I believe
14 that you were the -- in charge of the San Sault
15 project, test facility?

16 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

17 A Yes, sir.

18 Q What was your function
19 in regard to that?

20 A I was a resident engineer
21 on the construction of the San Sault facility, looking
22 after the interests of the Northwest Project at that
23 time. The site itself was constructed by Banister
24 Construction under our general supervision.

25 Q I wonder, sir, if we
26 could have the benefit, I understand you have
27 got a little slide show for us to illustrate that
28 facility, what it comprised, how it was constructed
29 and so on.

30 A Yes, sir.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

Q And I wonder, Mr.

Commissioner, if I might ask the witness to give a presentation on that site.

A Mr. Commissioner, before looking at a few slides that show what was constructed at SanSault, I would like to first briefly outline why the test facility was constructed, the criteria or requirements of a suitable test site and how this particular site was selected.

We constructed the test facility because we wished to verify the chilled gas concept to show that with reasonable construction care and disturbance restoration, natural gas pipelines-- to show that with reasonable construction care and disturbance restoration, natural gas pipelines can be constructed and operated safely in permafrost conditions without adverse affect to the environment. We wished to provide a means of field verification, of computer programs designed to predict changes in flowing gas temperatures and soil temperatures around the pipeline. We wished to provide a means of studying methods of restoring the backfill and right-of-way after disturbance by pipeline construction.

We wanted to study the problems that might be encountered between the time of construction and the time of operation when the chilled gas starts flowing in the pipeline. We wanted to better understand northern construction problems, including weather, transportation, logistics,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 communications, et cetera.

2 The criteria that we used in
3 selecting the site were: it must be located in the
4 permafrost region, perferably the discontinuous
5 zone where high ice content soils could be most
6 difficult. The site should have a diversity of soil
7 and ice content conditions within a small area.
8 It should be near the Mackenzie River which provides
9 a means of transportation for heavy construction
10 equipment and is representative of the conditions
11 through which a large portion of the actual pipeline
12 will be located. The site should be near a source
13 of gravel for road and facility^{pad}/construction.

14 And the methods we used in
15 selecting the location were: through route reconnais-
16 sance by aircraft and the study of aerial photography
17 by Dr. Mollard and others, five potential sites were
18 selected. A soils drilling investigation program
19 was conducted in June 1970 on the site considered
20 to have the most potential and as conditions were
21 found to be satisfactory, the search was discontinued.

22 The Sans Sault Test Site
23 is located on the west side of the Mackenzie River
24 between Norman Wells and Fort Good Hope about 70
25 miles south of the Arctic Circle. It is near the con-
26 fluence of the Mountain and Mackenzie Rivers and
27 near SanS Sault Rapids.

28 Now, could we have the
29 first slide, please.

30 This first slide was taken

1 in late March of 1970 on a reconnaissance trip to
2 inspect the potential site. The Mackenzie River
3 along here, the Mountain River coming in, in here, this
4 is known as East Mountain. There are several thermo-
5 karst ponds and lakes in the area, a couple of seismic
6 cuts that were one to two years old and a winter
7 trail down here that was 15 years old.

8 The next one please.

9 This is the same area looking
10 in the other direction. The Mackenzie, the Mountain
11 River, more seismic cuts, thermokarst ponds and the
12 Sans Sault Rapids are over about in this area. And
13 this gives an idea of the winter vegetation at the
14 site, very sparsely populated black spruce, some of
15 these small trees only a couple of inches in diameter
16 could -- can be up to a hundred years old. Here
17 again the Mackenzie River and East Mountain.

18 Next, please.

19 And this is another view of
20 the same area after construction and I would like
21 to first briefly outline what was constructed and
22 then we will go back and see a few slides of how it
23 was constructed.

24 Again, the Mackenzie River,
25 East Mountain, the fuel storage facilities. This is
26 the camp area, living quarters, our utility building,
27 this is one of the seismic cuts that you saw in the
28 previous picture. This is more fuel storage here
29 and this is our equipment area, the power generation
30 equipment, the refrigeration equipment, the compressors

1 in the middle here. This is the cycling circuit --
2 we will get into a bit of detail of that in a
3 minute and I am going off the picture, in this area
4 is what we call the cold circuit and there are
5 gravel roads of course around the two circuits.
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 This is a view of the compres-
2 sion equipment, the compressors to circulate the air
3 to the cycling circuit, and in this other building the
4 compressors for the cold circuit and the lube oil console
5 council in between. Next, please.

6 This is the back of the
7 compressor station that we just saw. This is the line
8 running out -- I'm sorry, the far one, this was the
9 line running out to the cycling circuit, and the line
10 on this side is the return line, so the air coming
11 from the compressors comes to a "Y" branch here,
12 and can go through the chiller or the heater. This
13 is a refrigeration unit that cycles chilled freon
14 to the chiller for cooling the air, and there is a
15 heater built in that cycles hot glycol through the
16 heater for warming it. These were usually used in
17 combination to give us a little better control.
18 Next, please.

19 So this is then the circulat-
20 ing -- I'm sorry, the cycling circuit, the chilled
21 air from the compressors that we saw comes along this
22 elevated 16-inch insulated line to a buried section
23 of 48-inch pipeline along here, through some more
24 elevated 16-inch connecting lines, and about 500 feet
25 of elevated 48-inch pipe here, and back into the 16-
26 inch insulated line to the Compressor Building. Now
27 we call this the cycling circuit because periodically
28 the temperature in this buried section of 48-inch
29 line was raised to a temperature above 32 degrees
30 Fahrenheit. Normally it operated at 25 degrees

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Fahrenheit, but periodically we took it up to 44 degrees
2 Fahrenheit, and of course, when the temperature gets
3 above freezing, thawing begins and with a gas pipeline
4 with the thawing and the generation of free water,
5 the pipe would start to float. So we installed this
6 hold-down housing over the pipe, and I'll get to that
7 in a minute. The elevated section was installed just
8 to determine what problems might be encountered if that
9 mode of construction became necessary. In our present
10 plans, we do not plan any construction in this elevated
11 mode except for a few sections near the compressor
12 station.

13 This, of course, is the living
14 quarters, the sewage disposal plant, this line along
15 here was excavated for the -- during a ditching test
16 and no pipe was put in the ditch, and so the spoil
17 material that was returned to the ditch line, it thawed
18 and caused a compression -- I'm sorry, a depression,
19 that probably wouldn't have happened if 48-inch
20 pipe had been in the ditch. This little thaw area,
21 we stripped some vegetation off for our research
22 program, and the thermokarst started developing and
23 then we filled it with wood chips -- you can see the
24 beginning of the wood chip installation here. We filled
25 the whole area with wood chips and pretty well slowed
26 down the development.

27 O.K., we'll just get back to
28 the hold-down arrangement over the buried 48-inch
29 pipe, please. This is a diagrammatic view of the
30 hold-down arrangement, the 48-inch pipe buried with

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 about three feet of cover over natural ground level.

2 We installed piles here that go down much deeper than
3 this diagram indicates, on each side of the line, with
4 a cross-beam structure over-head, and a saddle over
5 the pipeline connected to a centre column, to control
6 the floatation. Next picture, please.

7 This is a picture then of the
8 arrangement, one of the piles. The other one is out
9 of view here. The centre column holding the pipe down
10 and these steel blocks here, they were just tack-
11 welded together and when we wanted to conduct a
12 cycling test, we knocked one of these blocks out and
13 allowed the pipe to float to the extent of the
14 thickness of the steel block, and there were four of
15 these arrangements on the pipeline. I might mention
16 that when the temperature was raised to 44 degrees
17 in the summertime, we got floatation within a matter
18 of three to four hours. In the wintertime, of course,
19 that was a little bit slower. Next picture, please.

20 This is the cold loop, the
21 cold circuit where there were three 500-foot sections
22 of 48-inch pipe buried in this configuration. We
23 followed -- I'm sorry, again inter-connected with
24 16-inch insulated lines. The temperature of each one
25 of these buried sections was controlled in dependently
26 -- Section No. 2, of course, was controlled with
27 refrigeration and heating equipment at the main
28 facility. This one was controlled by the heating and
29 chilling facilities here, and more heating and chill-
30 ing facilities here. During the first year of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

operation, the operating temperature to this section was 28 degrees Fahrenheit, Section 3 was 25 degrees Fahrenheit, and Section 3 was 22. The second year of operations, we changed that to 9 degrees Fahrenheit, 7 degrees Fahrenheit, and 5 degrees Fahrenheit. The reason for changing the temperature was partly to determine the effect of the lower temperatures on vegetation, and partly to induce more severe stresses into the buried pipeline. I should mention here that the ditch flooding that Dr. Clark referred to was done on these three sections. We partially -- we dug the ditch, installed the pipe, backfilled the pipe to about the top of the pipe, and then hauled water from the Mackenzie and put it in the ditch. The main reason we did it here was because, if during the summer the pipe floated, well then the test would be all over, end of report; so we wanted to make sure that it stayed in the ground, and we found this method of ditch-flooding very successful.

The soil conditions in these three sections in this area, there is an anomaly here of very deep organic material, as much as eight or nine feet deep, with ice content up to 90% by weight. This section had two to three feet of organic cover over silty clays, with ice contents in the 30 to 40% by weight, and the third section, particularly near the top of the knoll, was in a silty sand condition with ice contents in the 10 to 20% range. There's a buried section on the cycling circuit that's out of the picture here, they were fairly high, too, in the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

-- oh, 30 to 40% range. Next picture, please.

This is just another view of the cold circuit, the cycling circuit. You notice the slight difference in elevation here. This general area on the top of the knoll in the silty sand condition with lower ice content than the material in the -- below the hill. This clearing along here was to do a snow road construction research project. The right-of-way was cleared by hand, and we tried to -- if any of you have been there, you'll notice that the terrain is very hummocky and we'll talk about that later. The test here was not too successful because we didn't have the proper equipment at the time. Of course we've done more research since at Inuvik and have found methods that we feel we can construct an adequate snow road but anyway, many passes of equipment were made over this section, and very little damage was done to the right-of-way. Next, please.

This is again a cross-section, diagrammatic cross-section of the pipeline to illustrate where the 48-inch line here, to illustrate where the temperature readings were taken. Each dot here represents one temperature censor above the pipe, at the side of the pipe, below the pipe, again farther out to the side, and a reference string out farther. The temperature dials were installed in plastic pipe so as to keep them in position with windows cut in to get a true reading. Each one of the buried sections had four rays of temperature censors like this, making a total of about 550 temperature point readings in

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 the system. Each diode point was connected by wire
2 back to the control room, and the temperature could
3 be called up at any time and get a print-out of the
4 whole set of readings on a teletype print-out. Next,
5 please.

6 O.K., that's briefly what was
7 built. Now let's look at a few slides as to how it
8 was built. This picture was taken in about late
9 August of 1971, construction had started. You see
10 the gravel roads here, the heavy equipment was brought
11 in by barge on the Mackenzie River, the temporary
12 camp facilities in this area and the gravel for the
13 roads and the facility pads were taken from the shore-
14 line of the Mackenzie River along here. Next picture,
15 please.

16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 This was taken about the
2 same time showing the extent of construction in
3 August, the road coming up from the river that we
4 saw previously, the fuel facilities, this is the
5 gravel pad for the living quarters, the main
6 equipment facility pad, the rights-of-way here were
7 cleared by hand and the brush was laid in the middle
8 of the clearing and the gravel in dumped by truck
9 onto the brush.

10 The only work that was done
11 in the summertime of course was what could be done
12 on graveled surfaces, no pipeline construction took
13 place in the summertime.

14 Next please.

15 MR. GENEST: Before you
16 leave that one there is that long water ditch
17 there. What is that?

18 A Yes, sir, that --
19 Mr. Genest, that is one of the seismic cuts that we
20 saw earilier. It was probably done a t a time before
21 the new landuse regulations came into effect and the
22 vegetation cover was stripped off and you can see
23 that some thermal degradation is taking place along
24 the cut.

25 Q It was badly done
26 then--

27 A Those are your words,
28 sir.

29 Q I cannot give evidence,
30 at least not yet. What do you say?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 A More care could have
2 been taken, certainly.

3 Q Right --

4 A Next please. This is
5 another shot of the same area at the same time. We
6 have a drilling rig here for installing piles. You
7 can see that some of the piles have been installed
8 in this area. The pile installation was done by
9 means of drilling a hole a little bit larger than
10 the steel pipe that we use for piles. The steel
11 pipe pile was installed in the hole and the
12 angle is between the outside of the steel pile
13 and the wall of the hole was filled with a water
14 mineral soilslurry and was allowed to freeze in.

15 The next picture please.
16 This shows one of the drilling rigs that we used,
17 it is an auger type drill. This particular one is
18 mounted on a soft track low ground pressure bearing
19 vehicle. Next please.

20 In the wintertime, this is
21 the same drill rig in the wintertime. We mounted
22 a canvas canopy over top of the drill rig and the
23 walls of -- the canvas walls can be lowered and you
24 can put a little heat in there so that the workmen
25 can go on with that process at very low temperatures.
26 This one was taken on a bright, sunny day.

27 Next one, please.

28 And as we mentioned earlier, no pipeline construction
29 work started until a frost had set in and this
30 shows a picture of a sideboom picking up a joint of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 48" pipe. This particular shot is on a gravel pad.

2 The next one, please. However,
3 this one is out on the right-of-way. There is no
4 gravel pad but you can see that with the compacted
5 snow a good ^{protection} of the vegetative cover can be
6 achieved.

7 Next please. Another
8 similar picture of the side boom picking up the
9 joint for installation. It is a very cold day.
10 We found that work could go on to when temperatures
11 got down to -35 to -40, but we did experience
12 days colder than that and most of the work on those
13 days were restricted to what could be done in the
14 utility building or inside. The lowest temperature
15 I think we experienced that winter and this is in the
16 winter of '70 - '71 was -63°F. This is the gravel
17 road beside -- well, I think Section number
18 2 the ditch has been excavated. Next, please.

19 This just illustrates the
20 canopy that was constructed, the canvas canopy over
21 the welding operation. You can see the light
22 from the welding operation. A simple cover
23 like that allowed work to go on in very low tempera-
24 tures. Next, please.

25 And this shows the ditching
26 operation. IN 1971 this was one of the largest
27 ditching machines in North America. There have
28 been larger one s developed and constructed since
29 this time, but certainly when this was in operation
30 we realized that although it could ditch permafrost it

1 really was not adequate for a project of this magni-
2 tude so we did promote the development of larger
3 machines.

4 Next please. One of the
5 most difficult problems that we have had are the
6 teeth that have to excavate the frozen material.
7 They are subjected to pretty hard material and we
8 have done a lot of research and development in the
9 ditcher 2 area and we think that we are very close to
10 having the problem solved now.

11 Next please. Another picture
12 of the ditching machine with the material coming
13 out on the conveyor belt. You notice that it is
14 pretty fine, fine material. It is well suited for
15 backfill purposes.

16 Next please. This is a
17 section of the ditch showing geotechnical technicians
18 and engineers in the ditch. They are logging the
19 material in the ditch wall. We thought it was im-
20 portant to know what was in every foot of the
21 ditch so that if problems developed along the line
22 we could tie the problem back to the type of material
23 in that particular area and hopefully come up with a
24 solution.

25 Next please. This is a
26 diagram showing the type of log that they came up
27 with on one section of the ditch wall. The top
28 layer here is organic matter. Lens of clay in here,
29 silt, here and the black spots here are solid ice,
30 probably remnants of ice wedges that do not come

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 quite to the surface.

2 Q Where is the pipeline --

3 A The bottom of the pipe,
4 Mr. Genest is along this line in here but before. --

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Is that
6 line on the level -- your pointer is wigwagging.
7 The line is on the level I take it.

8 MR. GENEST: He is a
9 bad pool player.

10 A It pretty well follows
11 the slope of the terrain itself, Mr. Commissioner.
12 Now, that the question has been brought up I might
13 ask why -- how do we know what material is likely
14 below the ditch line, the bottom of the ditch and
15 before the ditch was constructed we put in a
16 drill hole at ten foot centres down the centre of the
17 ditch line and cored and logged the material in
18 each drill hole so that the information showing
19 below the bottom of the ditch is by inference rather
20 than by ditch log observation.

21 Q Well, I think, Mr.
22 Williams, the Commissioner and I are having the
23 same trouble. What we are trying to get at -- there
24 is a straight line in the middle of each of those
25 diagrams. Is that the bottom of the ditch?

26 A Well, for instance here,
27 Mr. Genest, the heavier line above is the bottom of
28 the ditch. The lighter line below is a horizontal
29 line that depicts the elevation of that at that
30 level.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 Q So the bottom of the
2 ditch fluctuates a little bit, does it?

3 A Minutely. It tends
4 to follow the topography --

5 Q The top of the ground?

6 A Yes, sir.

7 Q How do you get it
8 straight and flat when you lay the pipeline down?
9 Or is that a question I should not ask?

10 A Well, it certainly won't
11 -- the bottom of the ditch will not all be flat
12 -- but it will be fairly uniform because the right-
13 of-way surface will be prepared with compacted snow
14 to give a fairly even surface, not necessarily flat in
15 the mean of horizontal, but it will be even and the
16 ditching machine will, in most instances, dig a ditch
17 that conforms to the surface. Now, the ditcher does
18 have some capabilities of deepening or shallowing
19 the ditch that it digs, but in normal construction
20 the bottom of the ditch fairly closely follows
21 the contour -- the surface contour and the bends that
22 are caused by the surface contour are taken up
23 by bending the pipe to fit the bottom of the ditch
24 that is constructed.

25 Of course, in southern
26 pipeline work a lot of grading is --right-of-waygrading
27 is done to make this a fairly flat surface on top
28 to work from. In the North of course we will not be
29 -- in ice ridge permafrost conditions we will not
30 be able to do that and so we have to do the best we

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 can with snow cover to make a relatively even surface
2 so the ditch is not going up and down like this but
3 it certainly will have some bends in it.

4 Q And then you bend the
5 pipe to fit the bottom of the ditch?

6 A Yes, sir.

7 Q Did we cover that,
8 Mr. Commissioner?

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes,
10 thank you.

11 A This is a close up of
12 the ditch wall showing segregated ice in one lo-
13 cation. You can see -- this is the ground surface,
14 so this is probably 12 to 18 inches down here and
15 some of this ice -- at least some of this ice will
16 be thawed in the summertime and in the part of the
17 active layer.

18 Next please. This is a
19 slide that shows some of the deep organic material
20 that I referred to earlier, the brown is organic
21 material and this -- the grey -- is mineral soil.

22 Next please. I threw this
23 one in because probably quite a few of you have
24 tramped around various locations in the north and
25 found the terrain real rough and hummocky and this
26 shows a cross-section of a hummock. They vary in
27 diameter from 6 to 16 feet or more. Very fine mat-
28 erial has migrated to the surface and a considerable
29 amount of segregated ice underlying.

30 Next please. More segregated

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts2213
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- IN Chief

1 ice in the ditch wall, this in a mineral soil condi-
2 tion.

3 Next please. Another
4 section of the wall showing deep organic material. In
5 one section the ditcher machine went through a log
6 that was about 8 or 10 inches in diameter buried at about
7 a depth of 8 feet and we took a piece of it and had
8 it carbon dated and found it to be about 3,900 years
9 old.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

This is the right-of-way

after construction has been completed. Notice there's a fairly substantial mound of excess material along on top of the buried 48-inch pipeline. This is the inter-connectiong 16-inch insulated line. This is the cantrough that carries the power line and signal cables for temperature sensors and so forth. Next, please.

This is a similar picture, in the spring following construction. You can see that ~~most~~ of the excess material has thawed and subsided. In fact, we're showing a little bit of -- maybe in this area, maybe a little bit lower than the surrounding ground. Next, please.

This is the same area one year later. We'll get into the vegetation cover in a minute. But you can see that there is excess material on the sides and a slight depression along the ditch line itself. Next, please.

In this, this is section No. 3, and you can see here that there still is considerable excess material along the ditch line, and that was taken, oh, at least two years after construction. Next, please.

Not everything that we tried was completely successful. This is part of the 48-inch elevated pipeline, polyurothane foam insulation, polyethyline jacket, this is the normal procedure for a southern operation, ^{but} when the temperature got down below 40 below it cracked pretty badly. Next picture, please.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 So our solution to it was to
2 jacket the whole section with aluminum sheeting to
3 protect the insulation in place. Next, please.

4 This is Section No. 1 on the
5 cycling circuit that has the hold-down housing. This
6 mess along the side here was where we -- before
7 ditching, we tried to remove the vegetative cover. We
8 were trying to get it in sheets so that we could
9 replace it back to the ditch line, but we found that
10 it broke up pretty badly and so we didn't return it,
11 but our botanists tell us now that we were probably
12 in error even though it did break up, that we should
13 have restored it to the ditch line and probably a
14 fair bit of it would have caught and would have
15 grown and would encourage the growth of native
16 vegetation . Also on this section, instead of mounding
17 the excess material over the ditch line, we spread it
18 over the right-of-way. This picture was taken in
19 June of 1971, and this gentleman is broadcasting grass-
20 seed over the area, about 18 varieties of grasses
21 were sown at that site. Next, please.

22 This is in July, one month
23 later, the grass has germinated and is coming along.
24 Next, please.

25 This is in August of 1971,
26 two months after seeding. The different colors here
27 indicate different types of grasses that were sown,
28 you can see some are doing better than others. Next,
29 please.
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

This picture was taken in 1973,

it's the same test section. You can see that the growth is fairly substantial, and some of the native materials are coming back. Next one, please.

This was taken last summer, particularly along here and in here the brush and shrubs are coming back and we don't have the large pools of water here that you can see in one of the previous pictures. Next one, please.

This indicates the height of growth of the grass at the test site, although it is fairly short yet. Next, please.

This is Section 3 and people might get pretty concerned about the water that is ponded in this area. I think this was taken about a year after construction. However, the picture was taken after heavy rains and you'll see in the next picture please, which is the same section, that that water is not permanent, it has dried up. This was taken last summer, the summer of '74. There is one pond here, but in general the -- it's fairly dry. Some of the grasses, as you can see, are not as good as some of the others.

The site -- the test site was operated, that is with chilled gas flowing through it, from March 1971 until mid-January '73, and it has not been operating with chilled gas flowing through it since January '73. Will you just back up to that last one, please, Lee? On the pipeline we had several risers on the line where we could measure, with survey equip-

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 ment measure the elevation of the pipeline. These risers
2 worked down and were fastened to the pipe itself, and
3 periodically we took survey measurements on the risers
4 and we found that neither during the operation or
5 the almost two years now since the -- it's more than
6 two years now -- since the site was shut down, none
7 of these buried sections have shown any sign of move-
8 ment. I think that's about it.

9 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
10 it might be helpful if Mr. Williams can provide to
11 Mr. Genest either slides or photoprints from them,
12 one that can be an exhibit and then perhaps we can
13 ask him on some later occasion to amend his evidence
14 by correction to show the number of the slide of
15 photoprint to which he was referring, and in that way
16 the transcript will provide a full account, not only of
17 his words but of the slides to which he was referring
18 at any given time.

19 MR. GENEST: I propose to
20 do that, Mr. Scott, with every slide presentation we
21 have. Hopefully, as time goes on we'll have them
22 ready with the slides.

23 Q Mr. Clark, can I ask
24 you then, that was the Sans Sault test site, was that
25 degree of information that you gathered to enable
26 you to arrive at conclusions about the geotechnical
27 feasibility of this pipeline, was that the most
28 important one or were there others?

29 WITNESS CLARK:

30 A It was certainly the
largest one, however, all three test sites, the pipelines

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper.
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 were buried in permafrost. There was no unfrozen soil
2 under the chill line at Sans^{Sault} or Norman Wells or
3 Prudhoe Bay, and that led us to select the testsite
4 in Calgary. In that particular area we were very
5 well acquainted with soil conditions.

6 Q There was no what?

7 A No unfrozen soil at
8 any of these test sites.

9 Q Yes, yes.

10 A so we wanted to test the
11 pipeline then in what we judged would be one of the
12 most severe frost-heaving situations that we could
13 find, so we ultimately, after looking at several areas,
14 again one of the things we were looking for was a
15 site that would be reasonably accessible because we
16 wanted to do a lot of experimentation at that site, we
17 looked in the Calgary area and found a site in North-
18 west Calgary, which is an old glacial lake basin,
19 in a very silty and clay-silt soil with a water table
20 that is relatively high, the pipe was buried at or
21 below the water table, and it presented us with, we
22 felt, a situation where the potential -- all the
23 conditions for frost-heaving existed.

24 Q You also had the
25 Prudhoe Bay facility and the Norman Wells test facility,
26 these are described in Exhibit 54, which is Section 8
27 and 9 of the application. Did you or anyone in your
28 panel have anything to do with the construction and
29 operation of these facilities?
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper.
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 A None of our panel did,
2
3 sir, but there were geotechnical engineers involved
4 with both sites and geotechnical and geothermal data
5 was developed and has been reported and made use of
6 by our group in assessing our geo-thermal models and
7 other geotechnical aspects

8 Q Then that's described
9 in the application material?

10 A Yes sir, it is.

11 Q I don't propose to go
12 over those in the same detail, Mr. Commissioner.

13 Now the test facility in
14 Calgary, you've described the Calgary test facility,
15 I understand that Dr. Slusarchuk is going to be going
16 into that a little more deeply.

17 A Yes, he will be present-
18 ing a description of that particular testsite as well
19 as the other programs that were developed at the same
20 time -- the laboratory programs and a model pipeline
21 testing program.

22 Q We'll come back to that.
23 Could you describe any other intensive field studies
24 that have been undertaken?

25 A Yes, we have carried out
26 a number of field drilling programs since the project
27 was initiated. These have been related to verification
28 of terrain typing, in examination of specific areas
29 such as potential river-crossing sites or formerly
30 cleared areas for permafrost regression studies.

 Q What is a regression
of permafrost?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

WITNESS CLARK:

A This is where the thermal regime has been changed, for instance, by removal of trees or surface vegetation, and there is a change then in the permafrost table and we've investigated a number of these; or a number have been investigated in connection with the project.

We've also made a number of studies to assess the river regime in reaches of a number of the proposed river crossings. Studies have been made of ice break-up, with particular emphasis on the Point Separation crossing. These have been repeated since 1973, and they will continue in the future. There is also an ongoing interdisciplinary study at Chick Lake which was initiated a few years ago.

MR. GENEST:

Q Where is Chick Lake?

A Chick Lake is north of Norman Wells, I believe it is about 85 miles on the east side past the Gibson Gap.

Now, our particular input into that study has been a collection of data on ground water behaviour and relating this to the overall hydrolic aspects. At this site we've made small watershed hydrolic field studies, and these will continue through design and construction phases. These studies, as well as the other environmental studies that are being carried out by our three consulting groups, as well as our plant

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 ecologists on our own staff, provide a baseline data,
3 including hydrologic data in undisturbed terrain, which
4 will be crossed by the pipeline in the Mackenzie Highway.

5 They also provide understanding
6 the magnitude and distribution of surface drainage to
7 be used in the overall design of the drainage and erosion
8 control measures. This gives a measure of the magnitude
9 of potential icings for example, by studying the active
10 layer flow which might occur over an operating chilled
11 pipeline and it will lead to effective control design
12 measures where required.

13 Subsurface flow will be computed
14 from the observation of the ground water table, the
15 slope and the measurement of the insitu permeabilities.
16 At this site the permafrost table will be probed to
17 determine the thickness of the active layer through
18 which this flow occurs.

19 Surface flow will also be studied,
20 by monitoring the flow into two small creeks which
21 drain a part of the Chick Lake Basin. These flow
22 measurements will be related to precipitation data, with
23 a view to improving the current available method of
24 predicting small channel flow. The Chick Lake is not
25 entirely a geotechnical study, our input is one aspect
26 of an interdisciplinary study.

27 I take it
28 Q Well, these studies/are not
29 completed, they are in progress at this time?

30 A The hydrologic studies were
initiated last year, they will be continued this year,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 and I believe the biological studies were initiated the
2 year before last, and some hydrology data was gathered
3 at that time.

4 Q Dr. Clark, or perhaps Mr.
5 Williams, could I ask what is the magnitude of the
6 financial expenditure that has been made on these test
7 sites, the Sans Sault, the Calgary, the Prudhoe Bay, and
8 the Norman Wells, to this stage?

9 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

10 A Yes sir, I can give you a few
11 of them in round numbers the cost of construction and
12 operation of the test facilities to the end of 1974
13 were: Sans Sault, four and a half million dollars,
14 Prudhoe Bay, two and a half million dollars, in addition
15 \$82,000 in environmental studies were conducted at the
16 specific site at Prudhoe Bay, and Norman Wells,
17 \$918,000.

18 Q What about Calgary, do you
19 have a figure on that?

20 WITNESS CLARK:

21 A To this point in time, the
22 expenditure at the Calgary test site, which includes
23 the laboratory testing and model testing, is of the
24 order of \$700,000, it's an ongoing study^{and} our budget
25 for the total study is about a million dollars, it will
26 be continued through this year.

27 Q That in round numbers gives
28 me about, between 8 and 9 million dollars? Is that
29 correct?

30 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Very close

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 to nine millions dollars.

2 Q In your opinion, and perhaps
3 I can ask this of the panel generally, how far has
4 knowledge of the problems you have studied been advanced
5 as a result of these test programs? Who wants to --
6 Dr. Hardy is the one having the longest experience
7 span in this, what can you tell us about that?

8 WITNESS HARDY: Well, sir, as far as
9 the fourth project is concerned, the one in Calgary,
10 on the frost heaving. That, as a research program
11 is the biggest program of its kind, that's ever been
12 conducted in Canada. It's involved more money, involved
13 more people, its objectives were broader than any program
14 that's ever been conducted in Canada. It was laid out
15 not from the point of view of simply getting restricted
16 results, it was laid out as far as I'm concerned, after
17 my association with research councils both in N.R.C.
18 and Alberta research council while I was at the
19 university. This program had just as much attention
20 given to it, in planning and in quality of instrumentation
21 and breadth of outlook in what was to be achieved, as
22 any program I've ever seen designed with a view to
23 getting grants from the Research Council. The results
24 that Dr. Clark has mentioned definitely have made a
25 scientific contribution irrespective of their merit as
26 far as the design of the pipeline is concerned. The
27 problem of course, the programs had to be sold, if you
28 like, the owners and Cagsol had to be convinced that
29 these expenditures were warranted. But as far as I am
30 aware, the money was forthcoming to conduct that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 particular program and I think it's also fair to say
2 this was true of the Sans Sault Rapids test section.
3 The money was forthcoming on the scale, or to maintain
4 a scale of investigation that is of the highest
5 technical quality. Now, there are not basic research
6 programs perhaps in the sense of pure research, they
7 are applied programs, but nevertheless they were designed
8 with, to give as complete results as you could ever
9 expect them to give within the limitations of time.

10 Now, Dr. Morgenstern has had a lot
11 of experience in this sort of thing too, and perhaps
12 his comments, he would agree or he would not agree,
13 or add to them.

14 Q Dr. Morgenstern?

15 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

16 A Yes, I would agree with that
17 Dr. Hardy, but I would also like to draw attention to
18 the total set of investigations that Dr. Clark described
19 to us, not just the intensive field studies, but going
20 back to the other Office Studies, and Analytic Studies
21 and Borrowing program.

22 This, in my experience constitutes
23 the largest intergrated program of research and development
24 for possibly any project, but certainly any Northern
25 construction project in Canada, and very likely comparable
26 if not greater than that for the Alaskan pipeline.

27 MR. GENEST:

28 Sir, my watch says five. I'm
29 moving to a different subject, is this a convenient to
30 break till eight o'clock, I understand?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, just
3 before we adjourn, I wonder if I could ask a question.
4 Dr. Hardy, I may have missed something, but I gather
5 there was a group of engineers from the Government of
6 Canada, Arctic Gas, and so forth, that went to Russia
7 in the spring or just a month ago, or something of that
8 sort. Am I right about that?

9 WITNESS HARDY:

10 A I'm not aware of that sir, but
11 there may be other people that are. We were looking at,
12 following our visit to Yakutskt, we fully anticipated
13 that there would be exchange of visits under the auspices
14 of government programs, and there were people in
15 N.E.S. , and Cagsol that were all set to go over,
16 and this turned out to be aborted. But I'm not familiar
17 perhaps Dr. Clark can give you information on this more
18 recent trip. I'm not familiar with it.

19 WITNESS CLARK:

20 A Yes, Mr. Commissioner, there
21 was a trip made by Canadian scientists and engineers
22 and government people. I don't remember the exact
23 date, it was fairly recent. One of the staff engineers
24 from Canadian Arctic Gas went on that trip, and spent
25 I believe it was two weeks in the U.S.S.R. including
26 the travel time, and they looked at gas lines and met
27 with a number of the operating people I believe from
28 Russia. We've had informal discussions with him since
29 his return. He did not get to the point where he was
30 talking with the people at the design level. It was

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 mostly in operations I believe that they pursued.

2 THE COMMISSIONER:

3 Yes, well you might consider
4 bringing that gentleman along as the member of a panel
5 Mr. Genest, at the appropriate time?

6 MR. GENEST:

7 Perhaps we could have Professor
8 Jackson organize a community hearing in Yakutsk, sir.

9 MR. COMMISSIONER:

10 Well, I think it's time to
11 adjourn until eight o'clock.

12 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED UNTIL APPROXIMATELY 8 O'CLOCK)

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

347
M835
Vol. XIX

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline Inquiry

Vol. XIX

17 March 1975

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

347
M835
Vol. XIX

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

March 17, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XIX - A

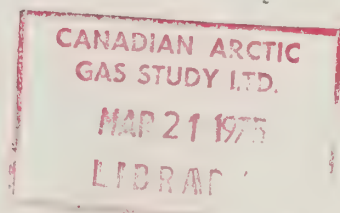
EVENING SESSION

347
M835
Vol. XIX-A

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.
MAR 21 1975
LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

1		
2	Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.	
3	Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,	
4	Mr. Alick Ryder and	
	Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Enquiry;
5	Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.	
6	Mr. Jack Marshall,	
7	Mr. Darryl Carter, and	
	Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited;
8	Mr. Reginald Gibbs Q.C.	
9	Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines Ltd.;
10	Mr. Russell Anthony,	
11	Prof. Alastair Lucas &	
	Dr. Andrew Thompson	for Canadian Arctic Resources Committee;
12		
13	Mr. Glen W. Bell and	
	Mr. Gerry Sutton	for Northwest Territories Indian Brotherhood and Metis Association of the Northwest Territories;
15		
16	Mr. John U. Bayly	for Inuit Tapirisat of Canada and the Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement;
17		
18	Mr. Ron Veale and	
19	Mr. Allan Luke	for Yukon Native Brother- hood;
20	Mr. Carson H. Templeton	for Environment Protection Board;
21		
22	Mr. David Reesor	for Northwest Territories Association of Municipalities
23	Mr. Murray Sigler	Northwest Territories Chamber of Commerce
24		
25		
26		
27		
28		
29		
30		



I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

John Ivor CLARK
Garry Wood HOLLINGSHEAD
Edward Charles McROBERTS
William Alexander SLUSARCHUK
Norbert Reuben MORGENSTERN
Richard H. COOPER
R.M. HARDY
Guy Leslie WILLIAMS
- In Chief (cont'd)

2227

EXHIBITS (ERRATA):

Our Exhibit 78 should be Exhibit 76
Our Exhibit 76 should be Exhibit 77
Our Exhibit 77 should be Exhibit 78

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. GENEST: May I proceed,
sir?

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

JOHN IVOR CLARK,
GARRY WOOD HOLLINGSHEAD,
EDWARD CHARLES McROBERTS,
WILLIAM ALEXANDER SLUSARCHUK,
NORBERT REUBEN MORGENSTERN,
RICHARD H. COOPER,
R.H. HARDY,
GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS, resumed:

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. GENEST (CONTINUED):

Q Dr. Clark, you had
finished before the dinner adjournment describing the
test facilities operated by or for Arctic Gas, and
I'd like to move on now to a discussion of the techn-
iques which are available for the design of a
pipeline from a geotechnical point of view. Would
you give us an overview of these?

A Yes. Adequate design
techniques are now available. For example, the geo-
thermal analyses when compared with data obtained from
the test sites, have confirmed that the models are
able to predict the geothermal regime along the right-
of-way and adjacent to the buried pipeline.

Q These models, sir,
are the computer models that you were describing
earlier?

A Yes sir, that's correct.

Q They have confirmed that
what they predict will actually happen?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 A Yes sir. These analyses
2 are applied to almost every aspect of geotechnical
3 design related to the pipeline and its ancillary
4 facilities. The study of river crossings and hydrology
5 have established the applicability of techniques for
6 determining the required depth of burial for scour
7 protection, the location of sag points, bank armoury
8 and construction techniques in relation to the heights
9 of slopes that must be crossed, and we will be present-
10 ing in a slide show somewhat later, some of the river
11 design techniques.

12 Q So that we know what to
13 look for, I suffer from sag points which I'm sure are
14 not the same you're describing. What is a sag point
15 in geotechnical language?

16 A Well, it's more in
17 pipeline language, sir. It's the point underneath
18 the river where the pipeline curves up after it has
19 crossed under the channel area and under the bank,
20 and it then bends upwards towards the ground surface.

21 Q When you come to a river
22 crossing, the pipeline must go down into the ground
23 and go underneath the channel.

24 A That's right, where it
25 makes that bend is the sag point.

26 Q And what about where it
27 bends to go down?

28 A That is an over-bend
29 at that point.

30 Q And bank armoury is again

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 what I may not understand.

2 A That is a protection of
3 the bank against erosive attack by use of rip-rap such
4 as gravel or boulders or gabions, which are wire en-
5 cased aggregates of gravel.

6 Q Would you proceed, please,
7 Dr. Clark?

8 A Yes. The special terrain
9 problems studied have established means of assessing
10 slope stability and methods by which slopes can be
11 stabilized if there appears to be a problem. They
12 also provide an indication as to the types of slopes
13 which should be avoided in route location, and as a
14 result of careful location work, only about 5% of the
15 entire route is located on slopes greater than 3 degrees
16 inclination. Again later we will be having a more
17 detailed discussion illustrated with slides of the
18 slope stability work.

19 Procedures have been estab-
20 lished for drainage and erosion control, and they've
21 been applied to the pipeline in the preliminary
22 design stage. These measures have received intensive
23 scrutiny by environmentalists consulting to Northern
24 Engineering, and they were found to be acceptable and
25 to satisfy their concerns with respect to erosion and
26 maintaining drainage. These designs that have been
27 developed to this point in time will also be illustrated
28 by slides later.

29 The pipe soil inter-action
30 studies, which we discussed earlier, have established

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 techniques for analysis of field bends which provide
3 assurance of soil stability. Studies related to depth
4 of cover have provided the necessary guide-lines
5 to determine the depth that the pipeline will be bur-
6 ied in specific soil conditions in geographic zones.

7 Q Can I just hold you up
8 there a minute? What is an analysis of a field bend?

9 A That is an analysis where
10 the forces acting on the soil at that bend are computed
11 and they are then compared with the capability of the
12 soil to resist those forces. If, for instance, it was
13 found that the forces from the pipe exceeded the
14 capability of the soil, then we would make a more
15 gradual bend, for example, to distribute the forces
16 over greater area, or to reduce them at any concentra-
17 ted point.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Can I ask
19 Dr. Clark to go back for a moment, Mr. Genest?

20 Q On page 9 you said,
21 "For example, a geo-thermal analyses when com-
22 pared with data obtained from the test sites
23 have confirmed that the models, computer models,
24 are able to predict the geothermal regime along
25 the right-of-way and adjacent to the buried
26 pipeline."

27 Now, are you saying that you are able to predict the
28 geothermal regime from Prudhoe Bay to the Alberta
29 border?
30

1 Am I reading this
2 correctly?

3 A Yes, sir. Having
4 the appropriate input parameters for each area
5 we are of the opinion that we can predict what
6 happens around the pipe when it is conducting
7 gas at below 32°F. We are also of the opinion that
8 we can predict what happens along the right-of-way
9 with these models on ce the vegetation has been
10 cleared and so on.

11 Q On page 10 you
12 said, "Procedures for establiishing drainage and
13 erosion control were developed and have been applied
14 to the pipeline in the preliminary design stage.
15 These measures have received intensive scrutiny by
16 environmentalists and they were found to be
17 acceptable and to satisfy their concerns with respect
18 to erosion and maintaining drainage."

19 As I understand it Northern
20 Engineering had environmentalists on its own staff.
21 Are those the environmentalists that --

22 A And the consultants,
23 sir. These would occur at informal meetings where
24 we would be looking at a particular area and
25 environmentalists might point out that there is
26 substantial amount of cross-drainage in that area
27 and would ask us how we would propose to cope with
28 that. We would then illustrate how we would
29 propose to cope with the preliminary designs and
30 discuss how they would work, conduct the water either

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 across the pipeline in the case of surface water
2 or where necessary through the back fill layer and
3 when these were discussed and explored -- I cannot
4 recall any situation where there remained any
5 concerns.

6 Q Yes, and we will
7 hear from those environmentalists in phase II, I
8 believe.

9 MR. GENEST: Phase II,
10 yes.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes,
12 excuse me, carry on, please, Mr. Genest.

13 MR. GENEST:

14 Q I think that I left
15 you at field bends.

16 A Yes, we had discussed
17 field bends, another design technique is the
18 methods to prevent pipe floating under bouyant
19 forces. These have been developed and will be
20 applied on a mile by mile basis for particular
21 conditions of terrain and ground water.

22 Design techniques and the
23 perametric analysis for foundations have demonstrated
24 that adequate foundations can be established for
25 all structures along the pipeline route.

26 Q Are we going to have
27 something on that later, Dr. Clark?

28 A We have the report and
29 in fact one of the ones which you mentioned earlier,
30 Mr. Genest, that is actually an updating of a report.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morganstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 There was one produced last July which is listed
2 in the documents available. The one that you now
3 have is a newer version of that report --

4 Q That is the report
5 on foundations --

6 A Yes, and we had not
7 proposed to present any illustrations of that .

8 Q Well, would you mind if
9 I asked you to just illustrate very briefly what
10 you proposed to do about methods to prevent pipe
11 floating?

12 A Well, there are
13 several techniques of preventing pipe floating and
14 many of these are conventional methods that have
15 been applied to pipelines over the years. These
16 would include weighting for instance. Under rivers,
17 most rivers, we will use a continuous concrete
18 coating.

19 Q That is, you coat the
20 whole pipe with concrete?

21 A That is right.

22 Q And the weight of the
23 concrete is enough to keep it from floating?

24 A Yes, and it has
25 what we call then a negative bouyancy. This can
26 also be accomplished by applying bolt on weights or
27 by anchors --

28 Q Bolt on weights?

29 A Bolt on weights,
30 concrete weights which are bolted to the pipe to

1 weigh it down or anchors that are drilled and cast in
2 the ground, either or frozen or unfrozen ground
3 there are suitable methods available. Some of these
4 methods will be illustrated in the discussions that
5 we will have and slide presentations on river
6 crossings.

7 Q Could you carry on
8 then.

9 A Yes, as a result of the
10 geotechnical studies undertaken for the applicant,
11 it was determined that the concept of a large-diameter
12 buried pipeline in which gas was chilled to below
13 32°F is environmentally and geotechnically
14 sound.

15 Q I do not know what
16 the going out of the lights signifies -- boredom --

17 I would like to move now
18 sir, to route selection and design and ask you
19 how does geotechnical engineering assist in
20 route selection.

21 A Yes, sir. Knowledge
22 of earth materials, the earth processes and
23 engineering principles was necessary in locating
24 the pipeline in terrain that has the least tendency
25 to be flooded, or to subside or to slump or to
26 gully and wherever unstable terrain had to be
27 crossed, design measures were developed to deal
28 with geotechnical problems.

29 Unstable terrain is most
30 common in the high ice content permafrost areas or

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In chief

1 on sloping ground adjacent to rivers, near the ocean
2 and in some parts of mountainous regions.

3 At certain localities the
4 route must cross these types of terrain, but
5 route location was done with a view to avoiding
6 hazards by crossing difficult areas where the least
7 construction damage would result.

8 Design measures were also
9 developed to provide for river crossings, drainage
10 and erosion control measures, slope stability problems
11 and pipe bouyancy.

12 Q Now, we will be discussing
13 these in more detail later on?

14 A Yes, sir.

15 Now, in the past many thou-
16 sands of miles of pipeline had been constructed in
17 North America without major geotechnical input.
18 However, the terrain conditions along the proposed
19 Arctic Gas Pipeline route, particularly through
20 permafrost areas, requires such input into design.
21 The first permafrost studies in the Canadian Arctic
22 with respect to^a/transportation route were carried out
23 by R.M. Hardy in 1946. Since that time most
24 major construction problems in the Arctic have had a
25 substantial input from geotechnical engineering.

26 With respect to pipelines
27 R.M. Hardy and Associates have been involved for some
28 20 years in geotechnical investigations related to
29 pipelines dealing with such features as route
30 selection, slope stability and design of river

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In chief

1 crossings. The major geotechnical studies related to
2 this pipeline, the Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline, have
3 been previously discussed in Appendix "B".

4 Q It is stated as "A"
5 in the synopsis of evidence and I take it that that
6 is a typographical error. We have already filed that
7 as an exhibit.

8 A Yes, sir.

9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 A Yes, sir. Now these have
3 led to changes in route alignment to avoid marginally
4 stable slopes or potentially unstable slopes, geologic
5 features such as thermakarst ponds and karst features
6 which might present future problems if not taken into
7 consideration. It has been necessary to carry out
8 hydrological studies to determine the pipe configuration
9 at river crossings, and to predict overland runoff flow
10 which will govern the final design of drainage and
11 erosion control measures.

12 Q What is the pipe configur-
13 ation at river crossings, is that the overbend and the
14 sag?

15 A The overbend and the
16 sag bends, yes. The geotechnical aspects of determin-
17 ing the most suitable foundation for structures is a
18 well-established engineering function and has been
19 applied to all appropriate structures to be built in
20 connection with the pipeline.

21 Q When you speak of
22 structures here, Dr. Clark, are we addressing oursel-
23 ves mainly to compressor stations?

24 A Yes, that would include
25 all buildings, communication towers, and so on,

26 Q Now, I take it the final
27 design of the pipeline with respect -- at least from
28 a geotechnical point of view has not yet been completed?

29 A On a mile by mile basis
30 the final design has not taken place. The terrain typing

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 has been completed along the prime route; slope angles
2 have been superimposed on work sheets; the route loca-
3 tions and some aspects of preliminary design are
4 shown on the alignment sheets. The route will be re-
5 fined as a part of final design. The control points,
6 for example, such as river crossings, will first be
7 confirmed and then the connecting overland links will
8 be re-examined and refined. Some preliminary typical
9 site specific designs for river crossings have been
10 proposed. Studies previously described, the
11 field programs and the test sites have established the
12 feasibility of the design and have provided many of
13 the design techniques and criteria necessary for the
14 final design activities. I am satisfied that a final
15 design giving full account to geotechnical considera-
16 tions can be accomplished.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: May I stop
18 you again, Dr. Clark?

19 Q You say you're satisfied
20 that a final design can be accomplished, that is on
21 the prime route. Is that what you're speaking of?

22 A Yes sir, the prime
23 route and the alternatives either filed or under
24 consideration.

25 Q Now you mean the interior
26 route through Old Crow Flats and you mean the cross-
27 delta route as well, is that right?

28 A Yes sir.

29 Our main emphasis to this
30 time has been placed on establishing performance

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 criteria rather than design criteria. For example,
2 it's impossible to establish a single criteria in
3 such as terrain typing as a basis for route location.
4 Terrain is one of many considerations that goes into
5 selecting the route. Other considerations include
6 environmental concerns. In many instances we have
7 moved the route to avoid an environmentally sensitive
8 area, and by so doing have traversed less favorable
9 ground than would have been selected solely on the
10 basis of terrain. Now if the pipeline can be built
11 across the less favorable terrain without introducing
12 hazards, as is the case for the route now shown on the
13 alignment sheets, then the less favorable terrain is
14 accepted as preferable to the terrain which might be
15 more environmentally sensitive. This is not always the
16 case, however. If a move to a less environmentally
17 sensitive area would result in a hazardous situation,
18 the line was not moved.

19
20 MR. GREST: Q When you
21 say "a hazardous situation" here, do you mean to the
22 pipeline itself?

23 A To the pipeline and the
24 terrain.

25 Q Right.

26 A Other constraints in
27 routing include the existing facilities such as the
28 Mackenzie Valley Highway and socio-economic concerns.
29 If, for example, we were forced to move the line due
30 to any other consideration, our job is to develop a

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 design which would be safe and environmentally acceptable.
2 Now with respect to frost heave, deeper formation bends
3 or settlement, the allowable movement is based on
4 limiting deformation in the pipe. For example the
5 stresses and strains in a pipe resulting from internal
6 pressure, temperature differential and so on, are
7 computed. The difference between these stresses and
8 strains and the maximum allowable values, then represents
9 the amount of additional stress and strain the pipe
10 can tolerate from differential movement. These are
11 translated into allowable deformation which establishes
12 the performance criteria for different geotechnical
13 considerations. The geotechnical objective is to
14 ensure that the performance is within the allowable
15 bounds.
16

17 Q Dr. Clark, do you mind
18 if I take you over that one again? I am using myself
19 as a litmus paper here. You said that deformation
20 at bends or settlement or frost heave, what you do
21 is you compute what is the allowable movement?

22 A The stress analysis people
23 first of all, compute the stresses and strains that
24 will exist if there were no geotechnical consideration,
25 for example. The code establishes what is the
26 maximum allowable, the difference between what is
27 computed and on the basis of lay-in temperature and
28 operating pressure, for instance, and the maximum
29 allowable, is the stress that we can absorb from such
30 things as heave or settlement or deformation.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Q I think I follow. What
2 has been the geotechnical input, the input of your
3 particular science, into environmental meetings or
4 the concerns expressed by environmentalists?

5 A Well, as previously
6 mentioned, there has been a number of informal meetings
7 with environmental consultants and continuous inter-
8 facing with staff biologists and the environmental
9 group at N.E.S. Now more formal meetings were held
10 with a larger group of environmentalists in April of
11 73 and this was discussed by the first panel. Geo-
12 technical personnel were at these meetings, which were
13 primarily concerned with route location, and they
14 participated in the reviews and revisions which were
15 discussed at, and following the meetings; where the
16 line was moved for any reason, again we were charged
17 with the responsibility of developing designs.

18 Q What additional geo-
19 technical work remains to be done prior to final
20 design and construction?

21 A Well, additional work
22 is required in a number of areas. For example, geo-
23 technical assessment is required for verification of
24 river crossing locations. At this time we are satis-
25 fied with the location of most crossings. Of the
26 200-plus crossings in Canada, there are approximately
27 eight where we feel changes may be made. Now these
28 changes will generally lie within a few hundred
29 feet of the existing alignment. The Great Bear River
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 crossing is an exception in that we are currently
2 examining a stretch of over a mile for possible re-
3 alignment. The present crossing has been drilled at
4 this time and its been instrumented in order that we
5 can be sure of the integrity of the slope before it
6 is constructed.
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

Q What if it lacks that
integrity, what plans do you have?

A Well, we already have a
design to ensure the stability of the slope, and this
was shown with the application. We have made a
parametric analysis of this design and found that
within the range of expected parameters that it would
be safe. Ultimately it would be a case of determining
whether it was more economical to implement this design
or to move it to a place where perhaps stabilization
would not be required.

Q Well, do I understand
correctly that you have now a design that will do the
job?

A Yes sir, and that will
be illustrated later on.

Q But you are looking
for possible other designs that will do the job just
as well and be more economic?

A Yes, and confirming if
in fact that design would have to be implemented
at that river crossing.

Q Can you help me on
the expression, "parametric analysis"?

A Parametric analysis would
mean that we would take the factors that have a bear-
ing, for instance, on slope stability such as soil
strength, and the components that make up that
strength, and we would look at it over a range of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 values, if you like.

2 Q From the worse case to
3 the best case?

4 A Ye s sir.

5 Q Something like that?

6 A Yes sir, and we would
7 vary such things as the internal pour pressure, the
8 friction angle of the soil, these are all parameters
9 that are used in slope analysis.

10 Q Now I interrupted you,
11 about the Great Bear crossing.

12 A Yes sir. Now morpho-
13 logical data has been gathered in river crossings
14 where required. Preliminary design work carried out
15 to date has defined the requirements for final
16 design. Additional ground truth and test data are
17 required before detailed design and construction specifications
18 are completed.

19 Q Let me stop you again.
20 I'm sorry, Dr. Clark, you have two expressions here
21 that I find hard to understand. "Morphological", I'm
22 sure everybody else is, if nothing else, but I have
23 trouble --

24 A Well, very simply,
25 "morphological", that is the channel -- river channel
26 geometry, the land forms that make up the river.

27 Q And what is "ground
28 truth"?

29 A It's site verification,
30 generally test holes. It might be examination of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 exposures on ground, collecting ground evidence by
2 being actually on the ground.

3 Q Oh, I see, so is the
4 use of the word "truth" to say -- to indicate that
5 you're proving the truth of your predictions, your --

6 A In a sense, with respect
7 to the terrain analysis, it's common to say that we
8 do ground truthing, this means going out and drilling
9 test holes and perhaps doing other types of tests to
10 verify the terrain typing.

11 Q When you say additional
12 of these are required before the detailed design and
13 construction specifications --

14 A Yes sir, the test
15 drilling will be predominantly at specific sites where
16 information is required for final design of foundations,
17 for ancillary facilities, for gravel pads, airstrips, roads,
18 etc. We will also be drilling and testing at river
19 crossings and slopes, which are judged to be potentially
20 unstable. The site specific drilling will be completed
21 in sufficient time to allow detailed specifications to
22 be prepared for all facilities. It's not expected that
23 a great deal of additional drilling will be required
24 for the pipeline route itself, and here I'm speaking
25 of the overland areas. It has been argued that the
26 terrain typing and verification test drilling would
27 prove adequate for most of the final mile by mile
28 design.

29 Q How do you plan, Dr.
30 Clark, to account for unforeseen terrain conditions

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 at specific locations?

2
3 A Well, we recognize that
4 it's not possible to anticipate all terrain conditions
5 prior to start of construction. Detailed specifications
6 will be available to cover all ancillary facilities of
7 construction, such as compressor stations, such things
8 as pipeline burial depth, slope stabilization require-
9 ments and so on. However, in some instances, conditions
10 will be encountered which differ from those upon which
11 the design are based. Therefore a design change
12 manual which will be available prior to start of
13 construction, will account for most changes necessary.
14 For example, if conditions vary substantially from the
15 original test borings, over the area of a compressor
16 site, for instance, the manual will outline adjustments
17 required for changes in pile length or spacing, perhaps
18 it would be necessary to put in more piles. IN other
19 cases such as slope stabilization measures, if condi-
20 tions vary from those anticipated, it will be necessary
21 for the geotechnical engineers to adapt the design.

22 Q That would not be covered
23 by a design change manual.

24 A No, not such a thing as
25 a slope stabilization.

26 Q This design change manual,
27 can that be developed before final design?

28 A No, it is developed after
29 final design. Our efforts now, all of these studies
30 which we have described, lead into the developmen t of
a design manual, and concurrent with this and more so

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 in following this we will have a design change
2 manual which would correspond to the design manual,
3 to account for unforeseen conditions.

4 Q so before you get the
5 final design, you will have to have what's called a
6 design manual?

7 A Yes sir.

8 Q What will that show?

9 A That will show such
10 things as the methods of anchoring the pipe to resist
11 buoyancy in certain areas. It will outline the radius
12 of curvature that can be followed in certain terrain
13 types for pipe bends. It will cover foundations. It
14 will generally cover slopes. It will bring together
15 into one document virtually the summary of the work
16 that has been done to date and the work that will be
17 done between now and the start of construction.

18 Q Who will be the users
19 of such a manual?

20 A Well, the design manual
21 is largely intended for use by the staff engineers
22 in completing the design and specifications for the
23 specific cases, such as compressor stations and so on.
24 The design change manual would be used in the field
25 by the inspectors, and geotechnical personnel charged
26 with the responsibility of seeing that the designs are
27 properly implemented.

28 Q What geotechnical con-
29 trol will be exercised during construction?
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 A Well, there will be two
2 distinct levels of geotechnical design control. Quali-
3 fied geotechnical engineers or inspectors attached
4 to each construction spread will be directly responsible
5 for the on-site verification of design assumptions, and
6 modes, and for any consequent modification and configur-
7 ation, if required. Decisions in this regard will be
8 mainly by visual inspection of the ditch wall during
9 the pipe-laying operation, inspection of cuts in
10 approaches to river crossings and so on. Drilling would
11 be carried out wherever necessary. There will be some
12 latitude for modification to design configurations in
13 regard to depth of cover, method of pipe restraint,
14 field bend angles and shallow slope stability, but
15 they're directly related to the permafrost and soil
16 conditions exposed in the ditch.

17 While pre-construction design
18 will have isolated the major design configurations in
19 relation to the ground conditions encountered, minor
20 changes are inevitable. However, the range of possible
21 deviations and required on-site response will be
22 covered in the design and field manual with the
23 field engineering staff responsible for their use.
24 In turn, the design engineering staff will monitor
25 the control being exercised by on-site staff, especi-
26 ally in relation to field modification. Now this is
27 one level of control.

28 The second level is the
29 direct geotechnical design control which would
30 be undertaken by the design engineering staff, if

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 required. The major thrust of the design phase will
2 of course be to obviate the requirements for such
3 control, but in certain areas such as in major river
4 crossings, close inspection and verification would be
5 undertaken by the design engineering staff.
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, Mcroberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 Q I do not understand
2 the sentence that you just quoted or stated, Dr.
3 Clark, that "the major thrust of the design phase will
4 be to obviate the requirement for such control,"
5 what do you mean by that?

6 A Well, for example,
7 at river crossings, the design would be to a level
8 of detail where it would be very clear and straight-
9 forward. Another example on the design of foundations
10 for structures, we would expect to have site specific
11 information, we know what is in the ground, we also
12 know what loads have to be carried by the foundations
13 and the foundations would be designed in detail and
14 specifications would cover their installation.

15 Q So then the people
16 in the field then merely have to follow the detail
17 specification and have little discretion left to
18 them?

19 A That would be the
20 Objective, yes, sir.

21 Q Yes. Do you anticipate,
22 Dr. Clark, that further information will be gathered
23 prior to and during the course of construction for use
24 in maintenance and operation of the pipeline in
25 future years?

26 A Yes, sir. A detailed
27 catalogue of the permafrost and soil conditions
28 found and adjacent to and along the right-
29 of-way, obtained prior to and during the construction
30 of the pipeline, will be assembled. Now this includes

Clark, Holingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In chief

1 --

2
3 Q You have been cut off.

4 A It will also be maintaining
5 a record of conditions in the ditch wall on a mile by
6 mile basis similar to that illustrated by Mr. Williams
7 where he showed you a profile of a ditch wall. However,
8 it would not be to that same detail. It would not
9 be to a research level. The frequency of the recorded
10 observations in the ditch will be determined by the
11 natural variability of conditions and the potentially
12 troublesome sections. Detailed records of the
13 results of drilling programs undertaken for the design
14 of all other structures such as compressor stations,
15 runways and so forth, will also be incorporated into
16 the data system. Now, the exact nature of the data
17 retrieval system is under study; It is very likely
18 to be found appropriate to structure part of the
19 system to a facility basis, for example, all of the
20 information collected for a given compressor
21 station and ancilliary structures will be included in
22 order that at any time we would know from our data
23 retrieval system all of the geotechnical data that
24 has been collected to that point of time at that
25 site.

26 Q Well, the object of this,
27 then, Dr. Clark, is to have logged as you go along,
28 a diary of all the conditions you encounter on every
29 mile of the right-of-way, have I got that correctly?

30 A That is right, sir, and
the frequency of observation would naturally depend

1 upon the variability, but at any point in time in
2 the future operation we would want to be able to
3 use -- we would want our data retrieval system to be
4 able to tell us what exists at any mile post or
5 any point on the line from the observations that were
6 recorded during construction of the ditch.

7 Now, certain types of informa-
8 tion such as hydrologic data from the basins
9 and changes in river morphology need to be gathered
10 over a long period of time. Ice jam data along the
11 Mackenzie River is being collected and this will
12 also be continued during construction. Now, these
13 data are needed for the design and will be valuable
14 in establishing a maintenance program for river
15 crossings and wharves.

16 Q What steps will be required
17 to be taken, sir, to assure proper drainage and erosion
18 control during the construction and operation of
19 the pipeline?

20 A The preliminary assessment
21 of the degree of drainage and erosion control
22 requirements has been included on the alignment
23 sheets using a number of categories based on the
24 site specific terrain information available at
25 this time. The location and type of control
26 measures will be determined using the design flows
27 in conjunction with terrain data obtained during
28 drilling programs.

29 Although most of the
30 design will be conducted in the office, final

1 location will be determined and flagged by ground
2 survey during the summer proceeding construction
3 when minor drainage courses are not hidden by
4 snow.

5 Now, the principle object-
6 ives of the measures will be to control all surface
7 and sub-surface drainage flowing across the
8 pipeline right-of-way and across other areas disturbed
9 by construction. Consideration will also be given
10 to the stability of other adjacent areas that have
11 been disturbed in the past and that could erode
12 during the lifetime of the pipeline.

13 In the long term, re-
14 vegetation will provide an erosion resistant surface,
15 but other measures will be necessary immediately after
16 construction until the revegetation is established.
17 The principle method will be to provide frequent
18 breaks in the back fill mound and to line these with
19 a protective layer of non-erodable soil. Other
20 measures which are described in the application will
21 be used in more critical areas to collect flows on
22 the upslope side, to direct them across the right-
23 of-way and to dissipate the energy of the concentrated
24 flows into the undisturbed area on the down slope
25 side of the back fill mound.

26 These measures will be
27 illustrated later in the slide show, sir.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse
29 me again, Dr. Clark, forgive me for interrupting,
30 but this will be the first pipeline in Canada which

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 has been built in continuous permafrost.

2 A Yes, sir.

3 Q It will be the first
4 pipeline in Canada that, in which the gas has been
5 chilled.

6 A That is correct, sir.

7 Q Will it be the first
8 48" pipeline in Canada?

9 A I believe there are
10 48" sections. Maybe Mr. Williams could comment on
11 that.

12 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

13 A Yes, I am fairly certain,
14 that the Interprovincial Oil Pipeline has some 48"
15 pipe in their system.

16 Q Well, is this going
17 to be Canada's first 48" gas pipeline then?

18 A Certainly in the pressure
19 range that we are talking about, yes.

20 Q Well, I do not want to
21 leap ahead but I gather that the pressure will be
22 greater than that of any gas pipeline in Canada,
23 that is true I take it? That is true, is it, Mr.
24 Williams?

25 A It is certainly greater
26 than the large transmission line systems that I am
27 aware of, yes.

28 Q Yes. Well, on page
29 17, Dr. Clark, I -- notwithstanding the spontaneity
30 of the questions and the answers -- they have a tendency

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 to --

2 MR. GENEST: I hate to be
3 blamed for that. We are required to give our evidence
4 before time.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: I
6 got into the habit of reading on ahead, that is the
7 only reason I am coming back, but it says on 17,
8 "Certain types of information such as hydrologic
9 data from basins and changes in river morphology need
10 to be gathered over a long period of time. Ice
11 jam data along the Mackenzie River is being collected
12 and this will also be continued during construction.
13 These data are needed for design and will be valuable
14 in establishing a maintenance program for river crossings
15 and wharves."

16 Is there any other gas pipeline
17 in Canada that entails river crossings of rivers
18 such as the Mackenzie? An Arctic river, in other
19 words?

20 WITNESS CLARK:

21 A Not an Arctic River that
22 I know of, sir, flowing in that direction. There are
23 many pipeline river crossings that encounter similar
24 problems, but the size of the river here is much
25 greater and the fact that it flows in the north-
26 south direction is a -- makes an unusual problem.

27 Q Creates the ice problem?

28 A Yes, sir, that is
29 correct.

30 MR. GENEST: South-north
direction.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 A Yes.

2 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
3 do not understand something here. You say, "Ice
4 jam data along the Mackenzie River is being collected
5 and this will also be continued during construction.
6 These data are needed for design."

7 A Yes, sir, we have
8 had ice break observations going on and they will
9 be carried on. The designs that we have developed
10 now, have taken that into consideration and we
11 believe it to be on the conservative side. We think
12 that by the time of construction -- we may have
13 advanced to the point where we can improve that
14 design, a refinement in which it would be less,
15 less conservative possibly.

16 THE COMMISSIONER: I
17 see, well -- carry on.

18 MR. GENEST: Well, perhaps
19 if I may just follow up on that, sir, perhaps the
20 Commissioner is sharing my question at this stage,
21 that you have said that you have designs that are
22 suitable and can make this pipeline geotechnically
23 sound, if that is the proper expression --

24 A That is right, sir --

25 Q -- in the North, and
26 then we run into a statement that you need some
27 more ice jam data for your design and there seems to
28 be a little contradiction in those two statements.

29 A Well, I guess the
30 emphasis there that is perhaps in establishing a

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In chief

1 maintenance program. We have ice jam data now. I
2 believe it is Dr. Cooper or Dr. Hollingshead that
3 will be speaking to this in more detail when we
4 discuss river crossings, but these data have been
5 collected by ourselves and by others. You can get
6 historical evidence of ice jams by examining sites,
7 for instance seeing where trees have been affected
8 by high water, high ice levels in previous years and
9 all of these have led us to, what we believe is a
10 conservative design.

11 Now, we are also doing
12 modeling of this -- not a physical model -- in order
13 to be able to predict flow and scour. Now, it
14 would be a case of collecting more data to assess
15 that particular model to see if we can produce a
16 refinement in that design.

17 Q Well, I think that
18 I understand, you say that you have made a conser-
19 vative design and does that involve your parametric
20 analysis, you have taken the worst case?

21 A Yes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 Yes sir, I believe Dr
3 Cooper can amplify on that now or during his slide
4 presentation.

5 Q Well now it is on our
6 mind, if I can pursue it, your designs have assumed
7 the worst case.

8 A We believe that they
9 have, yes.

10 Q And when you say that
11 you're looking for further information, it's not to
12 help you find a design, it's help find some other
13 kind of design.

14 A A refinement, sir, yes.

15 Q Refined from what
16 point of view?

17 A From what we have now,
18 that it might perhaps be possible to do a more economic
19 -al crossing than we have now.

20 Q So this data then, is
21 it required to have you cross the river at all, or
22 is it required to have you devise a more economical
23 way of crossing a river?

24 A The latter, sir. We
25 believe we could develop a design now to cross the
26 river safely.

27 WITNESS HARDY: Perhaps I
28 could add, M r. Genest, that the practice that is
29 being followed here is not completely unusual, as far
30 as some pipeline designs are concerned. A point that
I would emphasize in what Dr. Clark has said is that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 they are proposing to set up facilities that will
2 monitor the developments in the river to a degree that
3 has never been undertaken in any previous trunk line
4 in Canada. Now in the case of river crossings, and I
5 have done myself and in co-operation with other people,
6 several dozens of major river crossings, we have never
7 had a failure due to the under-estimating of the
8 scour protection. We have had failures because the
9 characteristics of that river were not accurately
10 enough known, and it's been out-flanked.

11 Now the thing is that some
12 of these can be -- many of them, in fact, could have
13 been prevented if there had been more routine data
14 collected with the idea of building up a background
15 of knowledge within the pipeline organization. On
16 top of that, if they're monitoring the performance of
17 a river, if they are in a season where there are
18 extraordinarily severe ice jamming, they can protect
19 their crossings on an emergency basis probably by
20 blasting and so on so this is not a completely
21 new concept that they have come up with a design and
22 that they still have to find out what the river
23 characteristics are. They don't know all they would
24 like to know about the river, but they think, as you
25 stated, they think or asked the question, I think
26 Dr. Clark has said he thinks he has a conservative
27 design. I think that looks after it as far as I am
28 able, sir.

29 Q I think that we were
30 at -- we had left erosion.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

WITNESS CLARK: Yes sir.

Q You were going to

illustrate later with some slides and we had interrupted you, and I might say, sir, that I certainly welcome, for my part, these departures from the prepared text. We were at river banks.

A Yes sir, the river banks at crossing sites will be protected from river erosion by bank arming such as rip-rap or by river training measures, where required. Now at river crossings temporary river control structures required during construction will be designed to have a minimal effect on the erosion of natural river banks. These temporary structures will be removed following installation of the crossing.

Q What kind of temporary structure, just briefly, are we talking about?

A This could be a berm for instance, built out in the river to facilitate construction, and then it would be removed at the end of construction.

Where the installation of a river crossing alters the resistance to erosion of the natural river banks, erosion control measures will be employed. The most common will be rip-rap for bank revetment. In some cases where the natural banks are highly susceptible to erosion, such measures will be used to ensure safe designs. Now frequent inspection and maintenance of the control measures will be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 essential during the years following construction to
2 ensure that conditions conducive to rapid establishment
3 of the revegetation measures are maintained. Unless
4 the erosion is severe, the remedial measures will be
5 applied during winter when access will not cause further
6 disturbance.

7
8 Q What steps will be taken,
9 Dr. Clark, either during the construction or the
10 operational phase of the pipeline to ensure the proper
11 stability of the pipeline? Perhaps before you launch
12 into your reply you might tell me what I mean by the
13 proper stability of the pipeline?

14 A Well, stability would
15 relate for instance to slope stability, the resistance
16 to bouyancy the keeping of the pipe in the ground
17 would relate to pipe stability.

18 Q Right.

19 A So the overall objectives,
20 of course, in the design are maximum human safety, the
21 minimum disruption to the environment, and a secure
22 and reliable pipeline system. Our planning and design
23 process has and we believe will continue to seek the
24 best available technology for the location, design and
25 construction, and the operation, and will talk about
26 these aspects later. From a geotechnical point of view
27 there's a wide range of natural phenomena such as slope
28 stability, river hydrology, surface and sub-surface
29 drainage, the freezing and thawing of soils, and so
30 forth, all of these are natural phenomena which can

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 be affected by the construction and operation of a chilled
2 gas line. Now then there is a complimentary range of
3 created factors such as the soil pipe inter-action,
4 the pipe floatation foundation and river crossing
5 design which must be considered in the planning and
6 design process. The approach that has been taken in
7 the design of the pipeline is to recognize and define
8 the complete range of potential problems and to obtain
9 a detailed qualitative and quantitative understanding
10 of the factors governing each problem area.

11 Now a fundamental part of the
12 approach to ensure the stability of the pipeline during
13 construction and after start-up was simply to avoid
14 problem areas. This approach represented a major
15 component of the planning and design process. Many
16 problem areas can be simply avoided by judicious
17 route selection. Where the proposed route runs with
18 the grain of the land, this can be accomplished econ-
19 omically and marginal areas can be avoided with ease.

20 Now where problem areas must be crossed, preven-
21 tative measures are available that are both environ-
22 mentally and economically acceptable. These measures
23 require the modification of natural conditions or
24 a change in design mode.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Q What do you mean the
26 grain of the land, running down the valley?

27 A That would be right,
28 sir. With respect to stability of the pipeline,
29 there are two distinct periods of concern in permafrost
30 regions, the time between construction of the pipeline

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 until startup, and that is there is no gas flowing,
2 and the time after the pipe becomes fully operational.
3 A range of situations must be considered during all
4 stages of the operation. However, it should be noted
5 that the design configurations that had been devised
6 to handle the pre-startup conditions, will still be
7 intact and operated if a major upset causes thawing sometime
8 after the line becomes operational. That is the
9 measures that we develop to resist buoyancy will still
10 be operative, for example.

12 Now the recognition of the
13 possible requirements for upset and contingency
14 repairs has developed -- has resulted in the develop-
15 ment of an operational and maintenance plan. Now
16 clearly no single emergency plan can be developed
17 because of the wide range of physical conditions
18 encountered and the seasonal variation of these
19 conditions. The early identification of problem
20 areas is of vital importance and a line patrol system
21 will be used to monitor the right-of-way. One of the
22 responses to a question by the pipeline application
23 Assessment Group, question 55, provides more detail
24 on the proposed monitoring.

25 Q What steps, Dr. Clark,
26 will be required to ensure the adequacy and stability
27 of access roads and all these ancillary facilities,
28 snow roads, air strips, compressor stations, communi-
29 cation towers, wharves, during the construction and
30 operation of the pipeline?

A Each of the facilities

With respect to snow roads, uniform with highway geometric resistance of the surface heavy equipment. Tests have been made in different locations. High values obtained for the snow road snow roads are capable of supporting, thus demonstrating their use of heavy vehicles. On construction will be used to obtain

With respect to snow roads, they will be built to conform with highway geometric design and to increase the resistance of the surface through the motion of heavy equipment. Tests have been carried out on snow roads in different locations. High strength properties were obtained for the snow road surfaces, showing that snow roads are capable of supporting high contact pressures, thus demonstrating their suitability to the movement of heavy vehicles. On cross-slopes, fill construction will be used to obtain level roadway surfaces.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 The compressor stations, the
2 foundations for the compressor stations located on
3 sites where significant thicknesses of permafrost are
4 present will be designed to maintain the underlying
5 soil in its frozen state.

6 The introduction of an air
7 space between the heated compressor building and
8 the frozen ground will ensure that the surficial layer
9 of soil that melts in the summer season will re-freeze
10 during winter. Whether the foundation involves piles
11 or fill pads, the stresses imposed by the structures
12 will be limited to provide a reasonable safety factor
13 against the occurrence of sheer failure or excessive
14 settlements in the soil.

15 Q What's sheer failure,
16 Dr. Clark?

17 A Sheer failure is where
18 there would be an actual slip between the pile and the
19 soil, where the allowable stress, the maximum stress
20 is exceeded.

21 Q And how do you introduce
22 an air space between the Compressor Building and the
23 ground? Just put it up on stilts?

24 A It would be up on piles,
25 yes.

26 Q Just like my old summer
27 cottage.

28 A Something like that, sir.
29 There are many buildings, there are examples of these
30 buildings in such places as Norman Wells, Inuvik and

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 so on.

2 Now in marginal permafrost
3 areas where the ground temperatures are close to the
4 melting point, refrigerated piling, end bearing piles
5 on rock or unfrozen hard material or fill pads may
6 be considered, if necessary.

7 For communication towers,
8 they usually involve relatively light loadings imposed
9 on the soil. The principal design consideration is
10 the uplift forces on anchors for guide towers. The
11 grouted wrought anchors have been used successfully
12 in Arctic Canada, and design methods and parameters
13 are currently available for assessing the capacity of
14 such anchors in permafrost. Footings or anchors
15 used for the support of communication towers will be
16 found at below the maximum depth of thermo-distribution
17 caused by the above-ground construction procedures.

18 Wharves will be required along the Mackenzie River
19 and Arctic coast. These may be either temporary
20 structures for the construction period, or permanent
21 installations. The structures will be located to
22 minimize the interference with the flow of the river.
23 They will be designed to be overtopped by the flowing
24 ice during breakup, if possible.

25 Alternatively, removable
26 pontoon type structures may be used as either floating
27 or grounded wharves, which will be placed in the river
28 following breakup and removed before freezeup.

29 Q Can you comment, Dr. Clark,
30 on the foundation design techniques that are going to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 be employed with respect to the construction of struc-
2 tures, facilities such as compressor stations in the
3 northern parts of the pipeline.

4 A Yes sir, in areas where
5 the permafrost is absent, the foundations for pipeline
6 facilities will be designed in accordance with the
7 conventional practice currently in use in temperate
8 regions. The foundation design will account for
9 frost penetration that occurs in these areas, in the
10 top few feet of soil during winter months. Heavily
11 loaded structures will be supported on sill pads or
12 pile foundations, depending on local soil conditions;
13 whereas lightly loaded structures may also be supported
14 by spread footings.

15 Now in permafrost areas where
16 frozen soil and ice may be present, within the soil
17 mass supporting the structure, a number of design
18 approaches are available where clean, well-graded
19 coarse-grained soil with no excess ice are known to
20 be present, foundations may be designed to permit
21 thawing of the underlying frozen soil. The allowable
22 load-bearing capacity of the foundation will then be
23 governed by the properties of the unfrozen soil.

24 Now where significant ice
25 contents are present within the sub-soil, and large
26 settlements would occur on thawing of the sub-soil,
27 the foundation designs will be based on maintaining
28 the permafrost in its frozen condition. In these cases
29 the geotechnical properties of frozen ground will
30 govern the allowable loading that may be placed on the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 foundation systems.

2 Q How do you do that, Dr.
3 Clark? How do you design a foundation to maintain the
4 permafrost in its frozen condition?

5 A Well, there are several
6 ways of doing this, one is the introduction of the air
7 space, for instance. In other cases there are situations
8 where refrigerated piles have been used to maintain the
9 ground in the frozen condition. There are several
10 techniques of doing this.

11 Q How do you refrigerate
12 the piles?

13 A Well, there are very
14 large refrigeration plants at the compressor sites.
15 One way would be to tap off some of that refrigerant.
16 We have looked at the requirement to maintain an
17 entire compressor station area, all the piles frozen,
18 using the same refrigerant, and it's some very small
19 fraction of what's available. Another is to use the
20 nature, there are piles that have been developed, for
21 instance, for the Alyeska line which are patented,
22 I believe, by the people that developed them, that have
23 a technique of circulating a refrigerant when the air
24 temperature is very cold, and this cools the soil around
25 the pile and circulation automatically stops when the
26 air temperature warms up. The theory is that during
27 cold ambient temperatures, the ground is chilled; and
28 during warm ambient temperatures there is no major
29 transfer of heat by the refrigerant fluid.
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

Q Would you proceed, sir?

A Yes. Foundation design in frozen ground will satisfy some of the criteria of those used in temperate regions. That is to say, to limit the foundation loading, to prevent sheer failure in the soil mass, and to limit settlement of the foundation to an acceptable level.

In addition, foundations will be designed to resist uplift forces resulting from frost heaving and re-freezing soil in the active layer. As the deformation and strength properties of frozen soil are known to be heavily dependent on temperature, a knowledge of the thermal behaviour of the sub-soil over the life of the structure is an important additional feature introduced into Arctic foundation design. The geothermal models apparently available are capable of solving a wide variety of thermal problems in soils.

Q What you're telling us here, then, sir, is that your computers can again predict --

A They are applicable to the foundation problem as well as the pipeline situation, yes. The predictive power of these models have been checked and found to be in agreement with observed field behaviour. Now pile foundations will form a considerable portion of the support systems adopted for the pipeline facilities. If bedrock or other firm strata are accessible, end-bearing piles will be founded on the strata. In cases where no

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 stiff strata are easily accessible, pile foundations
2 will be designed to transmit structural loadings to
3 the sub-soils through the shaft of the pile. In other
4 words, instead of transmitting the load to the end
5 to a hard material, it would be distributed -- designed
6 to be distributed along the shaft and spread out
7 throughout the depth through which it penetrates.
8 The stresses along the pile shaft will be limited to
9 prevent sheer failure of the pile soil interface, and
10 to maintain pile settlement within tolerable limits.
11

12 The use of fill pads for heavy=
13 ly loaded structures will also be considered and such
14 foundation systems may incorporate a system of ventil-
15 ation or insulation or refrigeration to maintain the
16 permafrost in its frozen condition. There are several
17 methods of maintaining the permafrost under fill in
18 a frozen condition, as well.

19 Q And these are in use,
20 these are well known?

21 A Yes, and I believe that
22 some examples were given by Dr. Legget in his overview
23 remarks last -- or a week ago last Saturday.

24 Q Next, Dr. Clark, I'd
25 like you to discuss the question of the depth of
26 burial and its influence on geotechnical considerations.
27 That's depth of burial of a pipeline.

28 A Yes sir. Now the geo-
29 technical design of the buried chilled gas pipeline is
30 facilitated by increasing the depth of burial to

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 within the limits allowed by the wheeled ditchers that
3 have been designed for use on this project. Now
4 depths of burial to the top of the pipe of up to six
5 feet below original grade can be readily achieved, and
6 the resultant depth of cover above the buried pipe
7 at this depth of six feet is in the order of 7 to 9
8 feet when the native backfill derived from the ditch
9 excavation is put back over the pipe.

10 Now depth of cover of five
11 to six feet achieved at a depth of burial of four
12 feet, and I should perhaps clarify that the depth of
13 burial is the depth of the top of the pipe below the
14 original ground surface, the depth of cover includes
15 the spoil mound which is mounded up over the pipe.
16 So the depth of cover of five to six feet achieved
17 at the depth of burial of four feet is adequate in
18 all permafrost zones and terrain types in restraining
19 potential pipe floatation prior to startup of the
20 chilled line when the line is restrained by the frozen
21 ground.

22 Q That -- of course there
23 will be some period when before you start running
24 chill gas in that pipeline when you'll have problems
25 which are not present when the pipeline is chilled.

26 A That's right, sir, there
27 are these two periods of concern, one from the end
28 of construction to the time of startup, and the
29 other is after startup when the gas starts to flow.

30 In the more northern regions

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 of the right-of-way, that is continuous permafrost
3 zone in the extreme northern portions of the discon-
4 tinuous zone, a burial depth of four feet ensures that
5 the pipe remains frozen to the bottom of the ditch,
6 thereby effectively preventing floatation. Now in
7 the region south of this zone, although the possib-
8 ility exists that thaw may proceed ^{to} below the buried
9 pipe, studies have shown that a native backfill at
10 a four-foot burial depth is adequate restraint against
11 floatation in all but the most ice-rich terrain.
12 However, terrain analysis shows that very ice-rich
13 soil should not generally occur in the more southerly
14 areas. If they are encountered, the depth may be
15 increased or a range of other design techniques to
16 prevent floatation are available, and I previously
17 mentioned several of these.

18 Q That's the concrete and
19 the weighting and the anchoring, and so on.

20 A Now, the increased
21 depth of burial also increases the stability of field
22 bends for both sag, side and overbend configurations.
23 Increased depth that covers is also desirable in the
24 prevention of pipe instability due to temperature
25 expansion, internal gas pressure along straight, buried
26 sections.

27 Q Would you explain those,
28 sir, what is instability due to temperature expansion?

29 A Well, the stresses that
30 are induced in the pipe are due to the internal pressure,
plus the difference between the temperature at which

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 the pipe is laid into the ditch and at which it's
2 operated. This induces a stress in the pipe. For
3 example, it may want to expand, and this expansion is
4 resisted by the -- to some extent by the bond of the
5 surrounding soil to the pipe, and it bends by the
6 strength of the ditch wall, acting to resist this
7 lateral force. All of these increase with increased
8 depth of burial.
9

10 Also the increased depth of
11 cover in the depth of burial increases the total
12 vertical load which is acting on the bottom of the
13 pipe, and this is of considerable importance to us
14 in suppressing potential frost heave in unfrozen
15 soil, as will be demonstrated later.

16 In some instances, increased
17 depth of burial is of value in reducing the potential
18 effects of differential settlement. Although there
19 is little likelihood of excessive differential settle-
20 ment due to the thermal regression of permafrost
21 during the operation of the chill line --

22 Q Whoa. Can we just stop
23 for a moment and let us know what thermal regression
24 of permafrost is?

25 A This is the thawing
26 out of permafrost under the line. This, of course,
27 wouldn't happen when the line is carrying chilled
28 gas, but prior to startup it may happen beneath the
29 line.
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams. -- In Chief

1 THE COMMISSIONER: Thermal
2 regression is melting?

3 A Yes. The retreat of
4 the permafrost table away from the line.

5
6 MR. GENEST: It takes a
7 lawyer to be that simple. I am sorry, Dr. Clark,
8 I withdraw that.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
10 to be fair I think it means tht the actual, the
11 substance contracts or is -- recedes from the
12 pipe itself, that was the point I take it?

13 A That is right. There
14 is a regression under these series.

15 Now as the ice content
16 in permafrost soils along the right-of-way usually
17 decreases rapidly with depth, the increased burial
18 depth will significantly reduce the potential for
19 differential settlement due to melting out of ice.
20 In other words, the deeper we go, the less ice is
21 encountered.

22 Now, there is a possible
23 exception where differential settlement could be
24 of concern, that is the peat plateau areas in the
25 vicinity of the Northwest Territories/Alberta
26 border. These plateau contain peat and fine grained
27 soil which may have^{high} ice content. A preliminary
28 assessment has been made of this area and the
29 current plan is to bury the pipe at a common
30 depth dictated by the presently thawed areas between

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 the plateaus, that is to say, it will be at greater
2 depths through the plateau area. Now, these areas
3 are currently the subject of further investigation.
4 Differential settlement can also occur due to loss
5 of ground support resulting from erosion. Well,
6 erosion prevention forms an important aspect of the
7 geotechnical design of the right-of-way, increased
8 depth also aids in this regard.

9 Now, in coarse grained
10 gravelly or boulder rich terrain it is likely that
11 the wheeled ditchers developed will not be used.

12 MR. GENEST:

13 Q Did we see that wheeled
14 ditcher on Mr. Williams' slides?

15 A You saw a certain
16 model of that. There has been developments. Larger
17 ditchers have been developed since that time.

18 Q It is the same idea.

19 A It is the same idea,
20 yes, sir.

21 Q And you propose not
22 to use --

23 A This would not be used
24 in certain terrain units, for instance, in very
25 boulder rich terrain or bedrock for that matter or
26 in certain coarse grained gravelly materials,
27 although recent experience with the existing larger
28 ditchers have indicated that it digs gravel very,
29 very well, but in these areas the importance in
30 pre step to burial is not as great and can be relaxed.

1 The resulting back fill such that the pipe stability
2 is insured at lesser burial depths with 2.5 feet
3 is considered as the allowable minimum depth of
4 burial in that type of terrain. Conversely it can
5 be noted that in the ice-rich or fine grained soils
6 in which the pipe stability requires slightly greater
7 depths of burial, the required burial depth can be
8 achieved with ease using the wheeled ditchers being
9 developed for this project and as you saw an early
10 version of the ditcher that dug fairly well at
11 the Sans Sault Test Site.

12 Q If you do not use the
13 wheeled ditcher, what do you use?

14 A It is largely a case
15 of blasting and back-hoe to get to the depth required
16 in those circumstances.

17 Q Not a shovel?

18 A No, sir.

19 Now, in active river and
20 floodplain areas the pipe will be buried sufficiently
21 deep to ensure against exposure as a result of scour
22 and degradation. On all major river crossings the
23 required burial depth will be based on a site specific
24 assessment of the potential for scour and on degrada-
25 tion. On very minor river crossings where no
26 significant scour or degradation is anticipated, the
27 pipe will be buried so the cover will be at least
28 4 feet.

29 Floation of the pipe
30 will be prevented in active river and floodplain areas

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 by the use of continuous concrete coating or
2 suitable anchoring techniques.

3 Q Could we move then,
4 Dr. Clark, to the interior route, that is the one
5 going past the Old Crow Flats and across the Richardson
6 Mountains. I would like you, sir, to describe the
7 geotechnical work that has been done with respect
8 to that route.

9 A Well, the geotechnical
10 investigations along the Interior Route were essentially
11 of the same level of detail as along the Coastal Route.
12 They were oriented toward classifying and mapping
13 terrain and identifying potential engineering
14 problems which might result at specific localities.

15 The airphotos, the geologic
16 publications and drilling logs were the basis
17 for terrain classification and mapping done by J.D.
18 Mollard and Associates. The results of the
19 terrain analysis which are at a scale of one
20 inch to 2,000 feet appear on the photomosaic align-
21 ment sheets and in the terrain typing legend.
22 These were discussed during the first panel.
23 Now, specific details on landform, bedrock and
24 soil materials, stratigraphy, depositional history,
25 permafrost, topography, drainage and vegetation
26 were determined for major terrain units mapped
27 on the alignment sheets. Information on areas where
28 specific geotechnical problems like buoyancy,
29 erosion control, slope stability, and unstable water
30 courses where these will be encountered were also

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 shown on the alignment sheets.

2 Now, field studies along the
3 Interior Route have provided information on
4 terrain classification and for the preconstruction
5 geotechnical studies. These field studies included
6 drilling programs by Alaskan Geological
7 consultants and Northern Engineering for the Alaska
8 Arctic Gas in Alaska and studies by Ripley, Klohn and
9 Leonoff for the hot oil pipeline feasibility studies
10 by MVPRL, the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Research
11 Limited. All ~~the~~ test data were made available
12 to us for our use.

13 Now, another field study by
14 T. Blench and Associates and Northern Engineering provided
15 data on river crossings.

16 The seismic design criteria
17 through this area has been developed by expert
18 consultants on the basis of data compiled by Arctic
19 Gas

20 Q Is there anywhere else
21 we discussed the -- I know Mr. Gibbs in his cross-
22 examination of the first panel made some point of the
23 seismic risk in this area. Dr. Morgenstern, I see
24 by your publications that you have had something to
25 do with earthquakes or the study thereof. Could
26 you comment briefly on the degree of risk?

27 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

28 A There is -- no doubt
29 there is a higher seismic risk associated with the
30 Interior Route than with the Prime Route, but

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 the risk is certainly no greater than had been faced
2 and
3 by the Alaskan Pipeline / design procedures have
4 been developed to accomodate the degree of anticipated
5 seismic loading on both the pipe and ancilliary
6 facilities.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: By the
8 Alaskan Pipeline do you mean the Alaska Gas --

9 A I am sorry, the Alaskan
10 Oil Pipeline which has faced more severe earthquake
11 problems than we encounter here.

12 Q Well, that is an oil
13 pipeline above the surface of the ground.

14 A Well, not all of it.
15 About half is buried and half is on piles.

16 Q I see. From the point
17 of view of seismic risk does that make any
18 difference?

19 A Yes, they -- much of the
20 right-of-way along the oil pipeline will be thawed
21 more than along the gas pipeline because of the
22 construction practice that they have chosen to
23 adopt. Many of these thawed sediments are prone
24 to a phenomenon called liquifaction that occurs
25 during an earthquake. The material turns into a
26 slurry due to the cyclic loading of the earthquake.
27 This problem is going to be less severe along the
28 right-of-way of the gas pipeline and of course will
29 not effect the integrity of the gas pipeline
30 itself because it will be encased by frozen soil,
so that generally a buried chilled pipeline can respond

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 to earthquakes better than a buried hot oil pipeline.

2 MR. GENEST:

3 Q And while we are on
4 the subject of earthquakes, what are the risks
5 associated from an earthquake or seismic point of view
6 with the prime route we have selected. Is it in an
7 area of high or low risk?

8 A Part of it is in an area
9 of moderate risk. The zoning that has been adopted
10 in design has been presented. The actual boundaries
11 of the zones escape me, but where we come down along
12 the flanks of the Richardson Mountains just on their
13 east side, there is a defined earthquake risk and
14 earthquake loading that has been embraced by the
15 design.

16 Q And what about for the
17 rest of the route down the Mackenzie Valley?

18 A It is very low.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: When you
20 say these problems have been overcome in the
21 construction of the Aleyska Oil Pipeline you mean that
22 they have worked out and elaborated design solutions
23 that they believe and you believe too will eliminate
24 the risk of failure in the oil pipeline in Alaska owing
25 to seismic activity?

26 A Yes, the procedure is to
27 anticipate the loading that the earthquake will bring
28 on the ground and on the pipeline and very conservative,
29 that is high levels of loading have been adopted
30 there and design has been developed to accommodate these

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In Chief

1 levels of loading.

2 MR. GENEST:

3 Q Are there gas pipelines
4 or oil pipelines in the more southerly parts of
5 North America that cross more risky seismic terrain?

6 A There are pipelines in
7 California of course which is quite seismic.

8 Q How would you grade the
9 seismic risk in California as compared to that which
10 exists across the Richardson Mountains?

11 A Well, part of it is
12 comparable, part of it is greater. California
13 itself is variable in its seismic risk.

14 Q And are there instances
15 of serious interruptions due to seismic activity,
16 earthquakes?

17 A Generally speaking a
18 pipeline is a very flexible entity and they can deform
19 quite well even across active fault movements. But
20 I am sure if I were to do a little research I could
21 find instances of pipelines that have failed during
22 very severe earthquakes.

23 Q What are the repair
24 problems?

25 A I cannot speak to that.

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Q Perhaps shall I just
2 let that hang there? It teaches me a lesson for
3 departing from the script. Nobody is going to bail
4 me out.

5 A Next panel, sir.

6 Q Next panel.

7 (LAUGHTER)

8 WITNESS HARDY: There were
9 pipelines in Alaska at the time of the Good Friday
10 Earthquake, of ten years ago or 12 years ago, and
11 my understanding is, I think Dr. Morgenstern can
12 substantiate this, or correct me, is that their
13 performance was relatively good, and there are many
14 authorities that consider that the only hazard to a
15 fracture of a pipeline in an earthquake of even quite
16 high intensity is only where it crosses a fault, and
17 so it's not -- the risk of fracturing a pipeline is
18 relatively small considering the pipeline as a
19 type of structure. Now the repair, of course the
20 pipeline does get broken and the problem is then to
21 repair it, and that of course would be relatively
22 simple if the earthquake didn't destroy other facilities,
23 but other facilities will probably suffer far
24 greater damage than will the pipeline. One of the
25 things that keeps coming up in engineering is that
26 when we get greatly concerned about the hazard from
27 seismic activity to a certain type of structure. You
28 see, the damage to that structure may be very minor
29 compared to other damage that is created in the
30 community at the same time.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 So I think in direct answer
3 to your question, what's involved in the repair, they
4 just have to get in and take out some pipe and put
5 in some more. But then with the conditions associated
6 with that seismic activity, that damaged the pipeline,
7 that may be a difficult operation and there may be
8 other things that are -- would have even greater
9 urgency of attention than the pipeline itself.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Water
11 supply and so on.

12 A That's right.

13 WITNESS CLARK: I should
14 add
15 perhaps, Mr. Genest, that the information provided to
16 us for design indicates that we cross no recently
17 active fault on either pipeline route. We recognize
18 that if the interior route is built, we will have
19 to do further field work to verify that there are in
20 fact no faults. If we do encounter a fault, we believe
21 we have developed a design which, if that fault were
22 to move, that the pipeline would come out of the
23 ground without failing, that it would not be bound
24 in place, and as Dr. Hardy pointed out, it's at these
25 faults where the only area of concern is for the
26 pipeline itself, the line in the ground.

27 Q Thanks, Dr. Clark and
28 Dr. Hardy. Would you carry on? We were discussing,
29 I believe, the geotechnical work that's been done
30 with respect to the interior route, and I took you
down a long path about earthquakes.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams,
In Chief

1
2 A Yes, sir. To continue
3 on, the preliminary design for terrain stabilization
4 has been developed from office and field studies
5 for both the coastal and interior routes. These
6 design measures are related to drainage and erosion
7 control, slope stability, pipe buoyancy, especially
8 in the thermal intensive terrain units.

9 Excuse me, the construction
10 techniques for access roads, gravel pads and founda-
11 tions of structures have also been devised with
12 consideration to geotechnical problems that might
13 result at specific locations.

14 Q As a result of the geo-
15 technical work that's been done with respect to the
16 prime route, that is the coastal plain route and the
17 interior route, which in your opinion is the preferable
18 route from the geotechnical standpoint?

19 A In my view the pipeline
20 route across the coastal plain is preferable to the
21 interior alternative. The coastal route would be much
22 easier to construct and rehabilitate than the interior
23 route. It presents no major problems. The interior
24 route is feasible, but more geotechnical problems would
25 be encountered. The route, for example, would cross
26 talus slopes which would be very difficult to cut
27 and maintain stability. Such slopes would require
28 a stabilizing berm at the bottom, to cover and support
29 the pipe. The berm would necessitate the use of
30 greater quantities of gravel fill along the route,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 necessitating blasting and probably greater terrain
3 disturbance than would be expected on the coastal
4 route. Now the seismic risk through the Richardson
5 Mountain is the greatest for the routes considered,
6 but design techniques are available to deal with the
7 potential problem areas. The interior route also
8 crosses numerous alluvial fans. Some of the fan
9 crossings will require special erosion control
10 measures to prevent channel degradation during a
11 prolonged sequence of flow or moderate floods.

12 Q What type of special
13 erosion control measures do you have in mind?

14 A Well, they would be
15 along the lines of those that we have discussed and
16 will be illustrating. For instance, measures to
17 prevent the flow over a fan becoming concentrated
18 down a pipeline and washing out the backfill, to
19 prevent shifting of channels and so on that might
20 undermine in certain areas. These fans are a more
21 dynamic land form in that particular part of the
22 interior route.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Just going
24 back for a moment, you said that in the Richardson
25 Mountains the route would cross talus slopes. I take
26 it that's fallen rock.

27 A Yes sir. These are the
28 slopes that one can see on any mountain area at the
29 bottom, it's rock that due to weathering and so on,
30 it drops away and builds up at the bottom on fairly

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1
2 steep slopes, generally in the range of in Arctic
3 areas, 35 to 37 degrees. We have measured them up to 41
4 degrees.

5 Q So it is unstable?

6 A Unstable under its own
7 weight, but if one were to cut into it, the material
8 above could become unstable. There have been talus
9 slopes crossed, though, with pipelines, and success-
10 fully. These are quite steep, these slopes.

11 Q You said that you would
12 have to construct a berm at the bottom, that is to
13 restrain the rock from falling and to restrain the
14 slope from receding?

15 A Yes, we would visualize
16 the -- from the geotechnical point of view we would
17 visualize the design of the pipe would be laid very
18 close to the bottom of this slope, and similar
19 material as the talus or gravel would be used to
20 build up and over the pipe a bench, if you like, at
21 the bottom, which would contain the pipe through that
22 area.

23 Q You say that pipelines
24 have been built in Canada to cut across talus slopes.
25 Westcoast for instance?

26 A I believe so. I've
27 discussed this with Dr. Hardy some time ago, and
28 I recall some discussions on that.

29 WITNESS HARDY: I think, Mr.
30 Genest, to put this in its proper context, --

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief
MR. GENEST: The Commissioner

asked the question.

WITNESS HARDY: Yes sir. To put it in its proper context, we sort of set up a straw man here. It probably came about because of the conversation between Dr. Clark and myself, and construction of pipelines on both Trans-Mountain and Westcoast and also the Pacific Northern line from Prince George to Prince Rupert, they have had major problems in construction, in building on talus slopes, and so any pipeline construction man would ask us, would heckle us, "What are you guys going to do about building through the southern route in particular, and across the Richardson Mountains when you come to talus slopes?"

One of the problems, though, is the fact that it's simply a matter of -- it's got nothing whatever to do with permafrost, it's a matter of excavating the stuff. A lot of the rocks may be as big as these tables we have lying around here, and to come in and excavate a trench, to put the pipeline down, becomes a very difficult and costly operation, almost it's invariably cheaper to go off the talus slope. But as Dr. Clark has said here, the talus slope in itself is not necessarily unstable until you cut into it, and then everything starts to move down, and all that he is saying here is that he believes he has a viable solution to locations where he may want to cross a talus slope, and I agree with this. It can be done. He has a mode of doing it.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 Then if he has to do it, he'll do it. If there is
2 some better way, if he can get off the talus slope,
3 he'll probably do that, too. But I think it is
4 important at this stage in looking at the feasibility
5 and the design of this pipeline that we can be sure
6 that we have a design plan that will accommodate the
7 variety of, all of the variety of conditions that we
8 anticipate will be encountered. I think perhaps a good
9 deal of the discussion that Dr. Clark has given here
10 this evening could be examined in that context, that
11 he has got modes of construction that will handle all
12 of the eventualities that we can foresee.

13 THE COMMISSIONER:

Q You may, were you forced
14 to take the interior route, you might have to cut across
15 some talus slopes and then again you might not have
16 to?

17 A That's right, sir, yes.

18 WITNESS HARDY: There are
19 going to be some talus slopes that he'll have to cross,
20 I'm sure of that, sir.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
22 think that settles that. You don't want to argue
23 the point, Dr. Clark?

24 WITNESS CLARK: No sir.

25 MR. GENEST: You have the
26 last word, Dr. Clark.

27 A The question is, "Where
28 do we cross it?" We cross them as close to the bottom
29 as possible.

30 Q And your technique for

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 dealing with them, ^{if} you do have to cross them, you said
2 is to put a stabilizing berm?

3 A I would say if you like
4 to simplify this, is building up the slope a little
5 bit rather than digging into it, building it up so
6 that we get the necessary protection, the cover
7 required. I think that would be the simplest con-
8 struction approach.

9 Q Then, Dr. Clark, I
10 would like to ask you whether, in your opinion, the
11 geotechnical work to date has been of sufficient
12 quality and quantity to enable you to express an
13 opinion as to the feasibility of constructing this
14 line, having regard to the soil conditions, the
15 permafrost conditions and the other relevant
16 geotechnical considerations.

17 A Yes sir, the geotechnical
18 work completed within our group convinced us that the
19 construction of the line applied for is feasible and
20 that with appropriate design and reasonable construction
21 care and proper revegetation techniques, a chilled
22 natural gas pipeline can be safely operated in northern
23 regions.

24 Q I'd like to ask the
25 consultants, Dr. Hardy and Dr. Morgenstern, whether
26 they agree with that opinion.

27 WITNESS HARDY: Yes sir, I
28 agree completely with it.

29 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: Yes, I
30 do.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 MR. GENEST: I would like to
2 move on to the proposed new routing east of Fort
3 Simpson and ask you, Dr. Clark, to discuss the extent
4 of the geotechnical assessment that has been carried
5 out for that proposed new routing.

6 WITNESS CLARK: The new
7 routing east of Fort Simpson has been terrain typed,
8 and we have referred to previous test borings drilled
9 by the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Research Limited.
10 A few of these fall actually within our alignment
11 sheet window. We have not done drilling along the line,
12 or at specific sites at this route, on this route but
13 I might add that there are certain sites that I believe
14 this week drilling will be initiated.

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

It's proposed to do test

drilling as necessary for verification of the terrain
typing. And at specific areas such as the Mackenzie
crossing and the Ebbutt Hills slopes. We have obtained
soundings at the proposed crossing of the Mackenzie for
a five mile stretch in the vicinity of the crossing.
We have developed a preliminary design for this major
crossing.

Q Now, the Ebbutt Hills,
with which I was not too familiar ten days ago, were
brought home to us by Mr. Gibbs in his cross-examination
of the previous panel. Have you any comments to make
on the geotechnical problems that you might expect to
encounter in those hills?

A On the basis of our exam-
ination of air photos and the alignments sheets, and
a reconnaissance by some of our geotechnical people, we
have found no evidence of instability at that particular
location. However, it would be classified as, all slopes
are classified in our assessment, anything over three
degrees, we say that this requires a further look.
Certainly this is well over three degrees and will have
a substantially more detailed look than a lot of the
flatter slopes. We will be doing more work at the
Ebbutt Hills, and would not anticipate major surprises
but feel that we could deal with them if we did encounter
something unusual there.

Q. Sir, Mr. Commissioner, I
had in the pre-filed testimony, some questions as to
assessment on the Cross Delta Route, I can put them or

CLARK, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 not. My intention formed later than the preparation
2 of this material, was to leave Cross Delta, to be dealt
3 with of a piece.

4 THE COMMISSIONER:

5 Well, why don't you put
6 that question and let Dr. Clark answer it.

7 MR. GENEST:

8 Q Could you describe sir,
9 what geotechnical assessment has been carried out for
10 the proposed Cross Delta Alternate Route?

11 WITNESS CLARK:

12 A Yes, sir, the significant
13 water crossings on the Cross Delta Alternative have
14 been sounded in both winter and summer. A test drilling
15 program was carried out prior to breakup in 1974 to
16 determine the nature of the bottom material. At the
17 same time a number of test holes were drilled on the
18 banks and at selected points on the ground. A further
19 drilling program was carried out in the fall of 1974 when a
20 number of borings were put down along the route and on
21 the banks at the crossings now proposed. Preliminary
22 designs have been established for the Shallow Bay Crossing,
23 North Arm Reindeer Channel, Langley Island Channel,
24 which is sometimes referred to as Middle Channel, and
25 the East Channel Crossing.

26 Q Mr. Commissioner, I am
27 now going to move this panel to the detailed discussion
28 of the Pipeline Application Assessment Group. I hesitate,
29 I know that we have still got about 8 minutes to go,
30 but some of these answers are lengthy, require expositions,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 some of them have even got mathametical formulae in them
2 which we thought, while highly technical, we thought it
3 important to get on the record, so that the Commission
4 Counsels and other parties, and scientific advisors,
5 can have the benefit of information. And I wonder if
6 we might break early tonight ,so that I can go at this
7 all of a piece tomorrow morning?

8 MR. SCOTT: I'm prepared to
9 occupy the eight minutes, not to bail out Mr. Genest,
10 but because there is a matter that frankly concerns me
11 that I think I should raise for his attention, rather
12 than for any ruling, while he is in the midst of his
13 examination in chief.

14 The preliminary rulings that
15 were made by you in September, provide on page number
16 five, as follows:

17 " I expect Arctic Gas to call as witnesses the
18 people who prepared the material, ^{if} and that means the
19 application I gather, " and who carried out the field
20 work on which it is based. I expect Arctic Gas'
21 witnesses to be examined in chief in the usual way, to
22 delineate, explain, and discuss the material filed
23 before cross examination."

24 Now, Mr. Commissioner, if and
25 when this pipeline is built, I think we will all recognize
26 after the fact, that this panel is perhaps the single
27 most important panel that will appear before you, for
28 the reason that any adverse environmental impact, or
29 indeed many adverse socio-economic impacts that may
30 occur, are going to be met as we heard last week, and

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 as we've heard today by particular design features.
2 Now, the test of your ruling it seems to me, would you
3 be able to conclude, following examination and before
4 cross examination in chief, that the design was adequate
5 to the challenges that confronted.

6 It seems to me frankly and
7 respectfully, and notwithstanding the synopsis that
8 while there is some particular analysis given to some
9 problems in that synopsis, and while with respect to
10 the assessment groups report, there is some particular
11 detail given. The bulk of the synopsis, it seems to me
12 has amounted to an assertion, repeated, that there is
13 confidence in the Applicant that they can solve design
14 problems, with occasionally a general statement about
15 the way those design problems may be solved when
16 adequate data or when the data they have is collated.

17 It seems to me respectfully,
18 that in discharge of their obligation under the
19 rulings, what the Commission is entitled to, is design
20 detail, and the assumptions^{and data} on which they are based,
21 so that the adequacy of these questions can be tested.
22 Now, it may be that that will be coming tomorrow.
23 Certainly from the synopsis of the response to the
24 Assessment Groups Report, it is apparent that there there
25 is some particular detail, and I hope that if this
26 concern attracts Mr. Genest, we will not tomorrow be
27 deprived of that kind of analysis with respect to many
28 of the subjects that have been referred to in the
29 synopsis. I think in essence what I am saying, is that
30 while there has been a full statement of the confidence

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
In Chief

1 of the organization that they can meet these problems,
2 there has not been much particular account, and I
3 emphasize particular, of how, even at this early stage
4 they are going to be met. And in my respectful submission
5 we should have that information in chief, before we are
6 put upon cross examination.

7 Perhaps Mr. Commissioner, now
8 that I have occupied the eight minutes I can simply
9 leave it there and see what transpires tomorrow, but
10 I did want to emphasize that that matter concerned us.

11 MR. GENEST:

12 Well, Sir, if I may make a
13 preliminary response, subject to further comment
14 when I have read Mr. Scott's statement. I would appreciate
15 some guidance from the Commissioner at the
16 end of this panel's evidence in chief. Tomorrow,
17 the evidence that will be led will deal, in what
18 I submit is a detailed way, with the major concerns
19 raised by the pipeline assessment group, who to
20 my knowledge at least were the major outside group
21 reviewing the technical aspects of the engineering of this
22 pipeline.

23 We have listed in our --
24 in an appendix to the evidence a very large volume of
25 studies and reports upon which the panel relies and in
26 the preparation of which many members of this panel
27 have been engaged. As far as calling persons who have
28 actually done the work, I have never interpreted your
29 rulings and I may have been wrong, but I have never
30 interpreted them as casting upon Arctic Gas an obligation

1 to call the man who turned the drill who produced the
2 bore hole from which a record was entered, because this
3 exercise by itself would take three years.

4 These are the main people
5 who with the main scientific expertise who have been
6 involved in the geotechnical aspects of the engineering
7 of this pipeline. We have listed and we have made
8 available for inspection to all the parties and
9 Commission^{Counsel} the very voluminous technical detailed
10 reports upon which their professional opinions are
11 based.

12 Now, if it is the desire
13 of the Commission that each one of these reports should
14 be tabled, should be gone over, should be explained,
15 that to me, in many cases absolutely incomprehensible to
16 a laymen and the technical data contained in them
17 should be read, I, of course, am in your hands, but it
18 seems to me that the purpose of these hearings is to
19 try and explain not only to you, sir, but to the
20 people of the North, what is involved in the
21 engineering aspects and to try and make it comprehensi-
22 ble to them.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams -- In chief

1 It seems to me that if we are
2 going to go into or if I am going to take Mr. Scott's
3 remarks literally, this panel alone could occupy
4 three months of hearing time. Now, perhaps I could
5 ask you to look at these remarks in the light of the
6 information that we have gained at the end of the
7 evidence in chief of this panel. If you are not
8 content, if you find some merits in what Mr.
9 Scott has urged upon you, then, Sir, I would
10 ask for guidance and I expect to be told where we
11 are deficient.

12 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
13 before we break I may say having known my colleague and
14 friend well, I am used to having what I assume to be
15 a temperate submission reduced to absurdity by him.
16 But I simply say that it seems to me appropriate that
17 this matter should be left to be dealt with at the
18 conclusion of the examination in chief or later. I
19 did feel obliged, however, to bring it -- to bring
20 our concern, for what it is worth, to his attention
21 at this time when he was in the middle of his examination
22 so that if advised he could deal with it.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: WE will see
24 how we get along tomorrow. We will adjourn until 9 o'-
25 clock tomorrow morning.

26 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED UNTIL MARCH 18, 1975)
27
28
29
30

347
M835
Vol. XIX-A

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:
evening session.
Vol. XIX-A 17 March 1975

347
M835
Vol. XIX-A



3 1761 11469199 1